



Lately Published by the same AUTHOR,

THE Register of the *Most Noble* ORDER of
the GARTER, from its Cover in *Black Vel-*
vet, usually called the *Black Book*; having Notes pla-
ced at the Bottom of the Page, with an Introduction.
In Two Volumes, Folio, with several Copper Plates.
Printed for *James Woodman*, Bookseller, in *Russel-Street*,
Covent-Garden, 1725.

E R R A T A.

PAGE 37. Line 17. read 1399. *Introduction*.
Page 74. Number LXXIX, *instead of* Coronation, read Creation. *Ap-*
pendix.

OBSERVATIONS

Introductory to an

Historical Essay,

UPON THE

KNIGHTHOOD

OF THE

B A T H.

By J O H N A N S T I S Esq;

Garter Principal King of Arms.

L O N D O N:

Printed for JAMES WOODMAN, in *Russel-Street,*
Covent-Garden, and Sold by J. ROBERTS in
Warwick-Lane, 1725.

OBSERVATIONS

Introductory to an

Historical Essay,

UPON THE

Knighthood of the BATH.

ON Occasion of a late Report, that a new Creation of *Knights of the* BATH, is intended, Questions have been proposed to me from several Persons, both in private Conversation, and by Letters, as well concerning the Origin, the Antiquity, the Dignity of their Degree, as concerning the ancient and solemn Rites of conferring it; for the Satisfaction of such Persons, and in Answer to their respective Demands, who have been pleased to consult me upon this Head, as supposing the Nature of my Office hath obliged me to make some more curious and particular Researches into the

B

different

different Ranks and Distinctions of Men in civil Life, I have here made some cursory Observations, which may be sufficient, at present, to give a general Idea of this State of Knighthood, 'till I find a proper Opportunity for methodizing the Collections, which may be applied, towards compiling a regular, and more complete History, upon the Subject.

I. In Answer to the first Inquiry, concerning the Origin of this Degree, it may be observed, that the End of all Institutions in respect to Titles, or Offices of Honour, is to encourage and promote Vertue; *That* being the great Support and Security of civil Government, All wise and well regulated States, in the World, have ever been careful to reward such Persons, who have distinguished themselves by any vertuous Qualities, or Atchievements, with certain publick honorary Badges of Distinction. And as Vertue tends, in all Instances, and in every different Branch of it, to promote the publick Good, so different Orders, or Rules of a vertuous Conduct, have been assigned to Men, by Means of which, they might, in their several Stations, be rendered, at once, more useful, and ornamental to Society.

The more specifick Rule to that *Degree* of Knighthood, which I am now considering, and wherein the proper Character of it, as contradistinguished from other Orders, doth consist, is comprehended in the
Reasons

Reasons of its Institution, which I am going to recite. It may be questioned, indeed, whether there is any Rule extant, in any Order, that may not be reduced to one, or other of the excellent Ends, for which this Degree, in particular, of the *Bath* was instituted; Ends so great, so good, so pious, and comprehensive, that they do not seem capable of receiving any Additional Improvement: For what can be said to amplify, or illustrate the Design of an Institution, after we are told, It “ is for the Exaltation of the Holy
 “ Christian Religion; the Support of the Rights of
 “ our Sovereigns; the Defence of their Realms; the
 “ Advancement of Justice; the Protection of Virgins,
 “ Widows, and Orphans; the Relief of the Op-
 “ pressed; and for demonstrating the Affection of our
 “ Monarchs towards the Estate of *Chevalrie*; to the
 “ End, both their Subjects, and Foreigners may be
 “ rewarded for heroick military Actions, and towards
 “ exciting other Persons to imitate such Examples.” So that in respect to the Origin of this Degree, in general, we may conclude, it to be founded, upon re-
 religious, upon moral, and political Considerations.

II. In Reference to the Antiquity of Knighthood of the *Bath*, I shall cite the Authority of ^a *Jean du Tillet*, who supposeth it to have been practiced by

^a Recueil des Roys de *France*, leurs couronne, & maison p. 431.

the ancient *Franks*, with *that* of ^b Mr. *Camden* to the same Effect, who writes, that He observed nothing more ancient concerning this Dignity, than that it was in Use among the old *Franks*: These were the Inhabitants of lower *Germany*, with whom, it is highly probable, the *Saxons*, who invaded *England*, had the same common Descent; and who, with other Customs, upon their Settlement here, introduced the same Method of Knighthood; *Du Tillet* farther remarks, these ancient *Franks*, when they conferred Knighthood, observed many solemn Rites; Before they performed Vigils, they *bathed*, to signify that such, who were admitted to this Degree, should be of a pure Mind, and of honest Intentions; Be willing to conflict with any Dangers, or Difficulties, in the Cause of Virtue; take Care both in their Words, and Actions, to follow the Maxims of Prudence; and on all Occasions, religiously observe the Rules of Fidelity, and Honour. Which Rites and Conditions, according to his Testimony, still continued to be practised in *England*; and from the Practice of them, Gentlemen were here denominated Knights of the *Bath*.

If it should be then admitted, that the Title is of no greater Antiquity, in this Kingdom, than from the Reign of *Hen. IV*; or, that we have not any authentick Monument, before his Time, which specifies a Degree

^b *Britannie* p. 124. *Ordines Angliæ*.

of Knighthood, under that express Appellation ; yet this ought not to be considered, as any Argument, against the Antiquity of the Thing itself : For if the Ceremony of *Bathing* was formerly used, as it will presently appear to have been, in creating Knights, though our Historians have omitted, on the Occasion, to mention that Ceremony ; yet all the real Ends of the Institution were equally answered, and the Honour of it, as effectually conferred, as if Bathing had been expressly mentioned by such Historians ; it being usual with the best historical Writers, under some general Character, or Action, to imply, or suppose Things, with which such Character, or Action, was known to be constantly attended. For Instance, the Inauguration, or Coronation of the King, doth suppose, that all the other sacred concomitant Rites of that Solemnity, were then fully and regularly performed, though they may not be distinctly enumerated ; The Rule holds, with Respect to all inferior Administrations, whether in religious or civil Life. The Honours of the Peerage, for Example, to which any Person hath been advanced, were ever presumed to be effectually conveyed, and the principal Rites, appropriated to the Conveyance of it, to be always performed, notwithstanding specifick Mention was not made by Historians, concerning the Performance of every separate Rite, in particular, then constantly used upon such Investitures.

It may be farther assigned, as a Reason, why Knights of the *Bath* had not that Appellation more early attributed to them by Historians, that it was the usual Custom, even in Records, and legal Courses of Procedure, to denominate all Knights by that Addition solely, without descending to specify the Order, or Degree of Knighthood, whereby they were respectively distinguished, as I have particularly observed in Reference to ^c Knights of the *Garter*; who for several Reigns, successively, after that most noble Institution, were not yet stiled Knights of the *Garter*, in Patents from the Crown, or Instruments respecting their own private Affairs. But no one will therefore pretend to infer, in Contradiction to unquestionable Facts, that there were no Knights of the *Garter* antecedent to the Usage of that Title.

Though the Denomination then was not used, yet if certain Ceremonies, peculiarly appropriated to this Degree, are mentioned by any former Historians or Records; Ceremonies, which had no relation to any other known Degree of Knighthood, we may justly conclude, this determinate Degree of Knighthood is thereby to be understood; as, particularly, from the Robes of Ruffet, or brown Colour, the crimson or scarlet Robe, the Vigils, the Bed, the Bed-ticking, the Matrass, the Canvas, the Sheets, the Oblation of

c *Introduct. to the Register of the Garter, p. 5.*

the Sword upon the Altar, &c. For since it doth not appear, that the Crown, at the Times referred to; did give Furniture, or Habiliments of this Kind, to Knights-Bachelors made by the Stroke of the Sword, or Bannerets, *simply* as such, or that they performed any of these Ceremonies; it undeniably follows, that Knights, to whom the like Furniture or Habiliments were given, and who actually went through all these Forms, are to be considered, as of a different Rule or Degree, both from Knights-Bachelors, and Knights-Bannerets.

Thus in a publick Creation of Knights, which was made by *Edward* the First, *Matthew* of *Westminster* reports the several known Ceremonies and the Vigils used on that occasion, without any recital of the Ceremony of *Bathing* in particular; yet in the ^e Record or Account of the Wardrobe, particularly referring to that Creation, there is an Article, wherein a distinct Charge is exhibited for Expences *solely* belonging to the *Bath*, to the Covering of it, and of the Bed, &c. And there is the same Reason to conclude, that at other Creations, the same Rites of *Bathing* were used; though it was not necessary to mention them, where the Reason of the Fact, and common Usage supposed every thing done according to Form: But, in exhibiting a Bill of Expences, it is usual, and necessary indeed, on some Accounts, to descend to particular Cir-

^e Appendix, Numb. xii, xiii.

circumstances, which yet it would be improper for an Historian to be minute, and scrupulously Particular in relating. And even the Clerks of the Wardrobe itself do not always mention those Particulars of the Covering of the *Bath*, and of the Bed, which yet are known to be implied, or tacitly comprehended in their Accounts: Even in the Reign of *Hen. VII*, a Roll exhibiting the Names and Arms of all the Knights created by him, only mentions in general, *Knyghts made at the Coronacion off the Kyng*; *Knyghts made att the Coronacion off the Quene*; *Knyghts made att the Creacion of Prynce Arthur*; *Knyghts made att the Creacion off Henry Duc of York*; without descending to distinguish them, as Knights of the *Bath*; though these were certainly so; as will appear from the Instruments in the *Appendix*, taken from other Memoirs of that Reign.

This, I apprehended, might be conveniently premised, as introductory to what I am proceeding to cite from *Mr. Camden*, who relates, “ That as to the
 “ Knights of the *Bath*, he had found nothing more
 “ ancient, than that this Dignity was in use among
 “ the old *Franks*, and that *Henry* the Fourth, King of
 “ *England*, on the Day of his Coronation, in the
 “ *Tower of London*, conferred the same upon Forty-six
 “ Esquires, who had watched all Night before, and

“ had *bathed* themselves; that he gave to every one
 “ of them a green Side-coat reaching down to the Ankle,
 “ strait-sleeved, and furred with Menever, and ha-
 “ ving on the Left-shoulder two white silk Twists
 “ hanging loose, with Tassels at them;” which Words,
 as far as they relate to *Henry IV*, are apparently ta-
 ken from *g Froissart's* Narrative of that Coronation.
b Mr. *Selden* seems to have followed the Opinion
 of this learned Antiquary; for he writes, “ that the
 “ first express Mention of the Knights of the *Bath*,
 “ as of a distinct Order, is commonly attributed to
 “ the Beginning of *Henry* the Fourth;” and he quotes
 the same Passage from *Froissart*, “ that this King, at
 “ his Coronation, made Forty-six Knights at the *Tower*,
 “ who were *bathed*;” though he soon refers us to what
 he had said in the other Parts of his Treatise, about
bathing, in making Knights-Bacheliers (as he terms
 them) by the Kings of *France* and *England*, long be-
 fore the Reign of *Henry IV*. Others *i* have pretended
 to discover a more early Rise of this Dignity and Ap-
 pellation, from a Statute in the 20th of *Richard II*,
 which in the old Prints was expressed in such a Man-
 ner, as might at first View support that Assertion; yet,
 upon consulting the original Record more carefully, it

g Appendix, Numb. 34.

b *Titles of Honour*, p. 678.

i *Thinn's Advocate, and Anti-Advocate*, MS. penes me, G. 2. p. 246 *b*.
Whitlock's Reading on the Statute of Pluralities, MS.

will be found, that the Word from whence the Mistake hath arisen is ^k *bannuz* banished, not, as it hath been supposed, *baignees* bathed; and accordingly it is observable, that in the Act of the 11th of *Richard II.*, whereby the Persons mentioned in this Statute of the 20th Year, *Belknap*, *Holt*, and *Burleigh*, three Judges, were banished, they have only the bare Addition of Knights; though indeed the two latter of them were really Knights created by *Bathing*: For though this Act of 20 *Rich. II.*, by reason of what hath been already remarked upon it, cannot be regularly produced to shew, that they were so created; yet the Fact is evident from another ^l Instrument of 7 *Rich. II.*, the Authority of which cannot be disputed.

There are good Grounds to suppose, that the Custom of *Bathing* before Knights were formally constituted, was much more antient; and that *Bathing*, as previous to a Degree of Knighthood, and concomitant with the Vigils, had been introduced by the *Saxons*. We have indeed few Memorials of that Age relating to our Subject; however ^m *Malmsbury* informs us, that *Alfred* conferred on his Nephew *Athelstan*, some De-

^k Item nostre Seigneur le Roi est assentuz, & ad grauntez de fa grace espediale par assent, & accord de toutz Seigneurs espirituels & temporels, & de toutz les Comones en cest Parlement a *Robert Bealknap*, *John Holt*, & *William de Burgh*, Chivalers bannuz, & demourantz en *Irland* q'ils reviendrent en *Engleterre*, &c. St. 20 R. 2. c. vii.

^l Append. Numb. 29.

^m Appendix, Numb. 1.

gree of Knighthood ; in which Action he gave him a crimson Robe, which might not then be appropriated, but is now peculiarly appropriated to Knights of the *Bath* ; and likewise a Sword, under the exprefs Denomination of a *Saxon* Sword ; which Article, as it may intimate that Custom of Knighting was introduced by the *Saxons*, and derived from them, so perhaps might be designed, as some special and standing Memorial to preserve the Remembrance of their Residence among us.

But *Ingulfus*, who lived at the Time of the Conquest (as it is usually termed) of this Kingdom by the *Normans*, is very particular, concerning the Practice of conferring Knighthoods by his Countrymen the *Saxons*.

“ It was the Custom (ⁿsaith he) of the *Engliss*,
 “ before the *Norman* Invasion, that he, who was to be
 “ regularly admitted to the Degree of Knighthood,
 “ should, on the Eve of the Day before his Initiation
 “ to that Degree, repair to some Bishop, Abbot, Monk,
 “ or Priest, and there, with all Humility and Com-
 “ punction of Heart, confess all his Sins ; and having
 “ received Absolution, should continue the whole
 “ Night in the Church, exercising the strict Offices of
 “ Piety, and a sincere Humiliation ; that in the Mor-
 “ ning he should hear Mass, offer his Sword upon the

“ Altar, and, after the Gospel, the officiating Priest
 “ should, with his Benediction, lay a Sword, sacred to
 “ that Use, upon this Knight’s Neck, who then ha-
 “ ving participated of the Holy Mysteries of the
 “ Communion, was from that Time constituted and
 “ reputed a compleat Knight : Of which Custom (as
 “ he proceeds) the *Normans* expressed an high Detes-
 “ tation, as reputing Knighthood conferred in this
 “ Manner, to be of a mean, degenerous, and ignoble
 “ Creation.”

Thus *Ingulfus* represents the Matter : But ^o Mr. *Camden* and ^p Sir *Henry Spelman* seem to be of Opinion, that the *Normans* did not really dislike, or discontinue this Practice ; because *William Rufus*, Son of the Conqueror, was Knighted by Archbishop *Lansfrank*, and upon some other Accounts specified by them, which it is not here necessary to mention.

I shall not dissemble, that in the Passage cited from *Ingulfus*, he doth not use the Term *Bathing* ; but this cannot be urged, upon any good Grounds, as a negative Argument, that *Bathing* therefore was not, at the Time of his Writing, used preparatory to the Vigils : For within the Space of eighteen Years after his Death, which happened in 1109, *Bathing*, as will appear from the Extract, that I am going to produce, is separately, and expressly mentioned, not as a new

^o Britan. p. 126.

^p Dissertatio de Milite in Reliquiis, p. 177.

Custom introduced, but as a common requisite Article among other known and received Rites of conferring Knighthood.

“⁹ *Geoffrey* the Son of *Fulk* Earl of *Anjou*, which
 “ Earl was afterward King of *Jerusalem*, being in the
 “ fifteenth Year, the Flower of his Age, *Henry* the
 “ First, King of *England*, proposed to give his only
 “ Daughter in Marriage to him : Overtures were made
 “ to that End by King *Henry* to *Fulk*, who promised,
 “ that he would conform to the King’s Pleasure, and
 “ Demands : Engagements were made, and solemnly
 “ ratified on each Part, and all Obstacles to the Exe-
 “ cution of the Treaty seemed to be effectually remo-
 “ ved : While the Negotiation was depending, the
 “ King sent a Message to the Earl, requiring, that
 “ his Son, who had not yet been initiated into any
 “ military Degree, should, at the approaching *Pente-*
 “ *cost*, come honourably attended to *Roan* ; that he
 “ might there receive his Arms in Form [that is, the
 “ Dignity of Knighthood] with other young Gentle-
 “ men of the same Age, and by that means partici-
 “ pate in the Royal Festivities. The King found no
 “ Difficulty on occasion of this Demand ; a just, and
 “ reasonable Request is easily granted. *Geoffrey*, by
 “ Command of his Father, upon the Prospect of being
 “ made Son-in-Law to a King, attended by five Lords

“ and a numerous Company of Knights came to
 “ *Roan*: The King, that he might the better disco-
 “ ver his Temper and Capacity, proposed several
 “ Questions to him, and conferred with him after
 “ a free, and familiar Manner; the whole Day was
 “ spent in Joy, and Triumph: Early the next Morn-
 “ ing a *Bath* was prepared, according to the Ceremo-
 “ nial when any Person is to receive Knighthood;
 “ then, after Bathing, he put on a linnen Shirt;
 “ over that a Vestment embroidered with Gold, and
 “ upon it a Mantle of Purple or Scarlet, with a Pair
 “ of silken Stockings, and Slippers on whose Out-
 “ side golden Lyons were worked. The King’s Son-in-
 “ Law being thus splendidly habited, an Horse of the
 “ finest Shape was prepared, and a Coat of Mail made
 “ of double Rings, and of such a Temper as render-
 “ ed it impenetrable to any Lance; his Boots for his
 “ Legs were likewise of Mail duplicated in the like
 “ Manner, and his Spurs were made of Gold; his
 “ Shield, charged with golden Lyons, hung upon his
 “ Neck; upon his Head he wore an Helmet adorned
 “ and enriched with many precious Stones, which
 “ was also tempered in such a Manner, that no Sword,
 “ or other Instrument of War, had Force sufficient to
 “ pierce it, and then was put into his Hand a Lance
 “ of Ash, armed at the Point with Iron of ^b *Poitiers*.
 “ In the Close of the Ceremonial, they delivered to

b See Du Fresn Gloss. v. Ferrum Piétaviense.

“ him a Sword which had long been in the King’s Ar-
 “ mory, in embellishing which, one *Galan*, the most
 “ famous Engraver of that Time, had discovered great
 “ Art, and used much Industry. Our young Knight
 “ being thus armed, as a good *Presage* of his future
 “ Gallantry, mounted his Horse with great Agility.
 “ To conclude, that Day being peculiarly dedicated
 “ to the Honour of his Knighthood, and to uninter-
 “ rupted Mirth; martial Exercises, and Decorations
 “ of Feasts, and Dress, were the whole Business and
 “ Entertainment of it. The Solemnity of the Initi-
 “ ation of this Knighthood continued successively for
 “ seven Days.”

Several Observations may be made upon this Hi-
 story, towards illustrating the present Subject: It is
 remarkable, in the First Place, that a King of the *Nor-*
man Line, the Son of the Conqueror, yet observed
Bathing, (which may be esteemed appendent to the
Saxon Custom of Vigils) even when he was in his *Nor-*
man Dominions beyond Sea: A Circumstance, which
 may be improved, to shew the Improbability of *In-*
gulfus his Opinion, concerning the Dislike of the *Nor-*
mans to the Method used by the *Saxons*, in creating
 Knights: For it cannot be supposed, whatever poli-
 tical Reasons might induce a Sovereign Prince to cer-
 tain Acts of Compliance with his People, against his
 Inclination and Sentiments, while he resided among
 them; yet, that in his foreign Dominions he would
 choose.

choose to act after a Manner disagreeable to his own Temper, and to that of his foreign Subjects.

II. This Creation of Knighthood, it may be farther observed, was, at the Time of solemnizing a Marriage; and the Degree of Knighthood of the *Bath* hath been since frequently conferred on the like Occasions. This Ceremony was performed upon one of the highest Festivals of the Year, the Day of *Pentecost*; in the Choice of which, it is not improbable, King *Henry* was rather determined for doing such an Act of Grace, since himself had been Knighted on that ^r Anniversary in the Year 1084.

III. A considerable Number of young Gentlemen, by whom *Geoffrey* was attended, were *s* knighted with him; and, conformable to that Practice, the same Usage hath been retained in subsequent Creations.

IV. It may very reasonably be concluded, that in the free and familiar Conversation which the King had with this young Candidate, he might himself descend to instruct him in the Nature, and Duties of the Degree with which he was preparing to honour him;

^r Mat. Paris, p. 11. Numb. 50.
^s Thus in Mr. Selden's Copy, in his Titles of Honour, p. 640. Ejus vero confodales qui cum eo militiæ suscipiendæ munus expectabant, universi bysso & purpura innovantur.

a Conjecture, which may be more reasonably made, as this King, having been himself a Man of uncommon Erudition, would naturally be a greater Encourager of Ingenuity and Arts : And it will be evident from Precedents hereafter cited, that we have had several Monarchs who did not think it below their Dignity, personally to instruct the Esquires who were to receive this Honour of Knighthood from them.

V. There is a near Affinity observable between the Make of the Habits, as they are represented at that Time, and the Manner, and Ceremony of putting them on, with the Forms that are now used, in both Respects.

VI. And whereas an Horse, we are here told, was presented to the young Knight, it is well known, that in succeeding Times these Knights of the *Bath* were obliged to make Cavalcades with great State.

VII. Besides these several Usages, which might be derived from the *Saxons*, a Lance, a Coat of Mail, a Shield, an Helmet, &c. were delivered, which probably were according to the *Norman* Method of conferring Knighthood, by whom, according to the Customs of *France*, Tilts and Tournaments might be then practised, which yet were not introduced into this Realm till under the Reigns of the succeeding Kings.

VIII. In the Formularies of the Knighthood of the *Bath*, and in several Precedents cited in the *Appendix*, the Eldest and younger Sons of our Sovereigns, as well as other Candidates for this Honour, at their Coming to Court for the Reception of it, were only permitted to serve up the first Dish to the King's Table; and had not the Privilege of sitting down, until they had been actually made compleat Knights, according to the Rites of the Ceremonial: Which Custom is plainly intimated, in this History, by the Words, *Regalibus gaudiis interesset*; an Institution of great Antiquity; for ' *Paulus Diaconus*, who died in the Beginning of the ninth Century, in his History of the *Lombards*, is very full and clear to this Purpose; " You
 " know, *saieth he*, it is not customary, that even the
 " Son of the King, should be permitted to sit at Ta-
 " ble with him, except he hath first received Arms from
 " some foreign Prince." And so late, as in the " Interview of the Emperor *Charles IV*, with *Charles V* King of *France*, in 1378, the Dukes who were not Knights, had not the Privilege of sitting at Supper with them, which was allowed to those who had been dignified with that Honour.

The next Testimony will be taken from *John Salisburienfis*, who lived to the Year 1182, and must be ad-

† L. I. c. 23.

‡ *Entreveus*, &c. par *Godefroy*, p. 72.

mitted a competent Witness; because, under the Pontificate of Pope *Adrian*, his, and our Countryman, he took a Journey, in his younger Years, to *Rome*, to visit that Pope; and in his Journey (as it appears from his own Testimony) did himself receive the Honour of ^x Knighthood, from an Archdeacon, in *Italy*: He is indeed silent, as to the Articles of *Bathing* and *Vigils*, but mentions another Characteristick of this Knighthood, the Oblation of the Sword, as a ^y Form pre-required; and which, he writes, still subsisted in his Time. *Petrus Blesensis* was his Contemporary, and Scholar at *Paris*, and as he had the farther Advantage of living for some Time in the Court of *Henry II*, so it must be supposed he was sufficiently qualified to judge of the Customs in that Court, especially of such, as were practised on the most publick, and signal Occasions. He ^z observes, that, “
 “ merly Knights obliged themselves, by a military
 “ Oath, to do true and faithful Service to the State;
 “ never to fly in Battel, and always to prefer the Pub-
 “ lick Good to the Safety and Preservation of their own
 “ Lives; and even, at this Time the Candidates receive
 “ their Swords from the Altar; thereby interpretative-
 “ ly, and as by a visible Test of their Sincerity, de-
 “ claring themselves true and faithful Sons of the
 “ Church; ready to maintain the Honour of the

^x Append. Numb. 5.

^y Append. Numb. 4.

^z Append. Numb. 6.

“ Priesthood, to defend the Poor, to punish Injustice,
 “ and to assert the Liberties of their Country : But
 “ this Design is now notoriously and shamefully per-
 “ verted : they who are at present invested with Knight-
 “ hood, being Enemies to the professors of Christiani-
 “ ty, are the Men who invade and lay waste the Patri-
 “ mony of the Church.”

This *Petrus Blesensis*, whom we last quoted, died, as appears from a ^a Record, before the Twentieth of *May*, in the fourteenth Year of King *John's* Reign ; under which, we find Directions in the King's Wardrobe for providing ^b Habits of Scarlet, of green or brown Colour, with Breeches and Shirts, *Braccis & Camisfis*, which agree exactly with the Formulary of creating Knights of the *Bath* ; and also Bedding, Coverlets and Sheets, which were doubtless for the Service of those who were to be *Bathed* : for no other proper, or indeed probable Occasion can be assigned for them : And like Orders frequently occur for providing Beds and Coverlets in the ^c Reign immediately succeeding, and in that too of ^d *Edward* the First. But, in this Reign, we have also a collateral Testimony to our Purpose from ^e *Matthew* of *Westminster*, who, tho' he doth not, as we have already acknowledged, descend to specify *Bathing* ; yet, in the

^a Claus. 14 Joh. ^b Append. Numb. 7, 8. ^c Append. Numb. 9.
^d Append. Numb. 10, 11. ^e Append. Numb. 12.

Record *f* for providing Materials for these very Knights, whom he doth mention, the *Bath* is expressly mentioned. And, as several pertinent and useful Observations may, and will be made upon this Citation from the Monk of *Westminster*, I thought it might be convenient to insert a true and entire Copy of it.

“ The King, to render his Expedition into *Scot-*
 “ *land* more splendid and numerous, caused Procla-
 “ mation to be made throughout *England*, whereby
 “ all Persons entitled [compellable] to take Knight-
 “ hood by Right of Hereditary Succession, that is,
 “ by Lands descended to them; or who had
 “ Estates sufficient to support that Degree, were re-
 “ quired, on the Feast of *Pentecost*, to attend at *West-*
 “ *minster*, where, every one of them should receive se-
 “ verally, out of the King’s Wardrobe, at the King’s
 “ Expence, all Things belonging to the Habit of
 “ Knighthood, except what related to the Furniture
 “ of his Horse [or Armour for such Knight]. At
 “ the Time and Place appointed, there was an Appea-
 “ rance of Three-hundred young Gentlemen, Sons
 “ of Earls, Barons, and Knights, to whom was di-
 “ stributed in ample Measure, according to their dif-
 “ ferent Qualities, Purple, fine Linnen, Furrs, and
 “ Mantles embroidered with Gold: And because the

“ Royal Palace, though spacious, was not of Extent
 “ sufficient to accommodate so great a Number; they
 “ repaired to the *New Temple*; where they erected
 “ Tents and Pavilions, having first cut down the
 “ Trees in the Orchat, and levelled the Walls of it,
 “ that they might separately, and more commodiouf-
 “ ly dress themselves in their splendid Habits. That
 “ Night, as many of them performed their Vigils
 “ in the *Temple-Church*, as the Place would well
 “ contain: But the Prince of *Wales*, by Command
 “ of the King his Father, kept his Vigils in the Church
 “ of *Westminster*, with some other Persons of the first
 “ Dignity. There, the Noise of Trumpets and Pipes
 “ was so great, and the Acclamations of the People
 “ so loud and extended, that the Voices in one Choir
 “ could not be distinctly heard in another. On the
 “ Day following, the King invested his Son with the
 “ military Belt; and consigned to him the Duchy of
 “ *Aquitain*. The Prince being Knighted, went to
 “ the Church of *Westminster*, that he might confer
 “ the like military Honour on his Companions;
 “ there, the Press, occasioned by a promiscuous Con-
 “ course of People, was so great, before the high Al-
 “ tar, that two Knights were stifled; and several faint-
 “ ed away; for every Knight had, at least, *Three other*
 “ *Knights* to conduct and support him. But the
 “ Prince was obliged, by Reason of the tumultuous
 “ Croud, to invest his Companions upon the high
 “ Al-

“ Altar, having, by his Guards, made Way for them
 “ to pass through the People. Then were brought and
 “ presented two Swans, introduced with much Pomp,
 “ and covered with golden Nets, adorned and em-
 “ bossed with golden Studs, a Solemnity highly grate-
 “ ful to the Spectators: The King offered a Vow to
 “ God, upon the Presentation of the Swans, that he
 “ would make a Descent upon *Scotland*, with a De-
 “ sign, whether he should live or die in the Attempt,
 “ to revenge the Death of *John Comin*, and the vio-
 “ lated Faith of the *Scots*, &c.

Thus *Matthew of Westminster* describes the Celebra-
 tion of this great Festival; wherein there is a particular
 Article, somewhat foreign indeed to our Subject; which,
 however, I shall proceed, directly, to explain; that is, a
 Vow, made upon the Exhibition, beforementioned of
 two Swans, in Conformity to an ^g Usage, continued for

^g In the sumptuous Festival held by Philip Duke of Burgundy at Lisle, on
 the 17th of February 1453, after the Jufts were finished. “ En telle ordon-
 “ nance vinrent les Officiers d’Armes, & le dernier d’eux estoit *Toison d’Or*
 “ Roy d’Armes, lequel portoit en ses mains un Phaifant en vie, orne d’une
 “ riche Collier d’Or garny de pierres fines, & de perles.” — Et apres la re-
 verence le dit *Toison d’Or* parla a iceluy Duc en cette maniere, Treshaut &
 trespuissant Prince & mon tres redoubte Seigneur, Voyez icy les Dames, qui
 treshumblement se recomandent a vous: & pour ce, que c’est la coustume,
 qui a este anciennement institue, qu’es grandes Festes & nobles Assemblees,
 on presente aux Prince, & Seigneurs, & aux nobles Hommes le Paon, ou
 quelqu’ autre noble Oyseau, pour faire des voeux utiles, & valables: pour ce sub-
 ject on m’ a envoye avec ces deux Damoifelles, pour vous presenter ce noble
 Phaifant; vous prians que le veillez avoir en souvenance; ces paroles estans
 dites, iceluy Duc prit un brief escrit, lequel il bailla a *Toison d’Or*, &c. and
 thereon he voms an Expedition against the Turks, *Hist. Chronolog. du Charles 8.*
 p. 672, and the same Narrative is in *Olivier de la Marche*, p. 428.

Chifflet Breviar. Hist. Velleris Aurei, c. 3. endeavours to explain this Custom.

some

some Ages ; according to which, when any hostile Expedition was intended, the commanding Prince formally and solemnly bound himself to execute it upon the Oblation of some Bird, as a visible Test or Signal of such Engagement.

Matthew of Westminster informs us, the Creation of these Knights was made, by Virtue of Writs directed to the Sheriffs, and we find indeed such Writs upon ^b Record : and it is farther acknowledged, that other Writs were at ⁱ that Time also sent to the Sheriffs towards an Election of Members of Parliament, to the End, such Aid might be given, which should become due to the King upon the Knighthood of this Prince : But if any of the young Gentlemen, the Sons of Earls, Barons, or Knights, as our Historian doth severally denominate them, who was to be promoted to this Degree, had not arrived to the Age of One and twenty Years ; or if any of them was not seized of an Estate, to the Value required by the Law ; in either of these Cases, a Proclamation by the Sheriff could not extend to bring such Person under an Obligation to

^b Claus 34 E. 1. m. 16. dorso. Rex Vic. Linc. Salutem. Præcipimus tibi, quod per totam ballivam tuam in locis, quibus videris expedire, tam infra Libertates, quam extra, publice proclamari facias ex parte nostra, quod omnes illi, qui Milites non sunt & Milites esse voluerint, veniant usq; *London'* citra diem *Pentecostes* prox. futur. ad apparatus suos eis in hoc casu necessarios de Garderoba nostra recipiendos de dono nostro, ut Arma Militaria de nobis ibidem suscipere valeant dicto die. Teste Rege apud Wolueseye 6 die Aprilis. Edem modo mandatum est singulis Vicecomitibus Angliæ.

ⁱ Rym. Fœdera, vol. 2. ad A. D. 1306.

accept the Degree of Knighthood: And they being Persons of the first Distinction, as it may be concluded from a List of their Names published by ^k Mr. *Ashmole*, there is no Question, but the determinate Ages of several of them may be ascertained from Records, which I am not now at leisure to consult, and therefore shall only observe, at present, that many of them are expressly mentioned in that List, as Sons of particular Persons; some of whom, it is supposed, might be living at the same Time. The Crown indeed was interested, in order to support a considerable Branch of the Revenue, not to admit any Person under Age to the Dignity of Knighthood, upon the Summons, and Return of the Sheriff; because, in case any Minor should have been actually knighted, the King had lost the Benefit of the Royal Prerogative, in respect to the Wardship of his Body, and the Marriage of his Person: and therefore, antiently, in Grants of Wardship by the Crown, there was a special ^l Provision, that the Assignee, or Guardian should not assist his Pupil, in any Measures, towards his Reception of Knighthood, 'till the King's Consent should be previously obtained: and for this Reason it is still supposed, upon good Grounds,

^k *History of the Garter*, p. 38.

^l Rot. Pip. 15 H. 2. Norf. Avelina de Ria reddit compositum de 140l. 13 s. 4 d. quod fecit filium suum militem, qui erat in custodia Regis.

Cart. 5 Joh. n. 199. *Wardship of Rob. de Stutevill granted the to Archbishop*, dum ipsum non maritabit, nec militem faciet, nisi per voluntatem nostram.

that Gentlemen under Age, who were to be advanced to the Knighthood of the *Bath*, had Letters Missive, from the Crown, immediately directed to them, or to their Guardians, requiring them to receive that Degree upon solemn Occasions: And consequently, it seems, no Minor was under any Engagement to receive it, by Virtue of any Mandate directed to the Sheriff. For, as to this Writ of 34 *Edward* I, now under Consideration, it may be proper to advertise, that it is only a Proclamation of Favour or Indulgence, inviting such Persons, who were not already Knights, “ *qui milites non sunt, & milites esse voluerint,*” and were desirous to receive Knighthood, that they might appear to accept that Degree; and not a Proclamation, by Way of Command, or strict authoritative Compulsion to those, who were under any Engagement by Tenure to be Knighted, or else might be fined; in which Case, the Clause was “ *omnes, qui milites esse debent, & non sunt*” all such, who *ought* to be Knights, and are not so; and the Sheriff is not here directed, or empowered personally to summon, or to return the Names of any Persons; which are the Terms used in the Form of the Writs, that command Persons, obliged by Virtue of their Tenures, to take Knighthood upon them: It is highly probable, that in regard to the ready and loyal Zeal of those, who, for the King’s Service and Pleasure, made a voluntary Tender of themselves, to accept Knighthood on this Occasion, and did not accept

it from any Motive of legal Constraint, had some particular Marks of Favour then conferred on them.

II. In this Extract we find Musick, and different Kinds of musical Instruments, which are still retained when Knights of the *Bath* are created, with some Variation, as expressing the Joy, and contributory to the Grandeur of the Solemnity.

III. Every Knight-Candidate had, at least, three other Knights, *Milites*; which may possibly design the Veteran Knights, who instructed him in the Rules of the *Bath*; and by whom, according to the Ceremonies, such Candidate was to be introduced to the Presence of the Sovereign, or to his Lieutenant; or we may understand by them, the two Esquires-Governors, and the young Esquire, who, by the Formularies, are required to attend him.

IV. It appears also, there was some Difference in the Furniture provided on the Occasion, according to the different Quality of the Persons to be created Knights; and the Custom hath been conformable to this Rule: for we find Habits provided under the following Distinctions, ^m *tanquam pro Milite simplici*, as, for Knights simple; ⁿ *tanquam pro Baneretto*, as, for Knights-Banne-

^m Append. Numb. 10, 16.

ⁿ Appendix, in several Places.

rets ; *o* *tanquam pro Comite*, as, for an Earl ; *p* *comme pour celuy, qui est fitz de Conte*, as, for the Son of an Earl.

V. In Regard to the Number of the Knights mentioned by this Historian, I must take the Liberty of remarking, upon the Authority of the Record here referred to, that he was mistaken. There were not, as it appears from this Instrument, Three hundred Gentlemen then knighted, but only Two hundred sixty seven ; whose Names being already printed by *q* Mr. *Ashmole*, it was not necessary to repeat them in the *Appendix*, where a distinct Account is given of the Habits provided by the Wardrobe on the Occasion. At which Time it is also memorable, as I have Authority to observe from a Manuscript in my *r* Custody, that the Earls of *Hertford* and *Lincoln*, at that Time, performed the Ceremony of putting on the Spurs of the Knights ; one of the grand Rites in conveying this Degree of Knighthood.

Under the Reign of *Edward II*, the Accounts of the Wardrobe are still more express, and particular, in mentioning the Articles relating to the Creation of

o Appendix, Numb. 20.

p Appendix, Numb. 13.

q *History of the Garter*, p. 37.

r Appendix, Numb. 14.

Knights ; they recite, that Orders were given for providing, ^f *Capam intus vigilandum*, an Outer-garment ; for that, doubtless, is the ⁱ Signification of the Term, to defend them from the cold Air of the Night ; and we learn also from the same Accounts, that this ^u Garment was of a mixed, or murray Colour.

The Creation, upon the 20th Day of *January*, in the ^v twentieth Year of *Edward II*, was appointed, by the Command of the King's eldest Son ; between which Time, and the Renunciation of his Father, only five Days intervened ; and therefore the Knights, for whom Robes were then prepared upon this Mandate, are concluded to have been Knights of the *Bath*, who attended on the ^v Son's Coronation, on the first Day of *February* following. These Orders discover a farther Particular, that Cloth of Gold, grounded upon diaped Silk, was also then delivered ; which, in the Accounts of succeeding Reigns, is often termed *Racamatz*, and *Sigaston*.

The next ^z Instrument, to which I refer, bears date five Days after, being the Day of *Edward* the Third his Accession to the Throne ; at which Time, he had not himself been knighted : It bears the express Title *pro Militia Regis*, for the King's Knighthood, and contains

^f Appendix, Numb. 16.

ⁱ Du Fresne Gloss. v. Capa.

^u Appendix, Numb. 16, 20. ^x Append. Numb. 20.

^y Dugd. 1 Vol. Baron, p. 143. of the Mortimers, and in several other Places.

^z Appendix, Numb. 21.

the several Materials provided by the Wardrobe for that purpose, and they are such, which are still continued for the same Use; though for the King's Service, upon this his personal Knighthood, they were of a more rich and curious Composition.

It is more particularly remarkable, from this Record, that with reference to the Ornaments of the Chamber, wherein the King was to *bathe*, there is a Circumstance mentioned, which discovers, the King's Arms were placed in the Corners of the Tapestry; and the Method of placing the armorial Ensigns of Knights of the *Bath*, in the Room where they *bathe*, still continues. It likewise appears from the same Record, the King performed his Vigils on the Last of *January*; and we know, that he was solemnly crowned on the Day following.

Our Writers are divided in Opinion, as to the ^a particular Person, by whom this Creation of Knighthood was actually solemnized: they who suppose him to have been ^b *John of Heinnault*, afterward Earl of *Cambridge*, seem to me to form their Judgment upon the most probable Grounds, as it was more especially, by his Interest, this King obtained the Throne.

In the ^c third Year of his Reign, there is an Entry, directing Provisions to be made for Vigils, Beds, and

^a By Henry Earl of Lancaster. Walf. Ypod. Neustr. p. 509. n. 30.

^b Cleopatra D. 9. in Bibl. Cotton. *Edwardus* in festo Sanctæ *Brigide* a *Johanna* fratre Comitiss *Hannoniæ* miles factus, & eodem die in Regem consecratus.

^c Appendix, Numb. 22.

Robes, according to the usual Manner: and in the Year ^d following there is the like Entry in Behalf of five Knights, who were, probably, made at the Coronation of the Queen-Consort, mentioned in that Account as crowned on the 18th of *February*: One of these Knights, *Thomas de Bradstan*, by special Favour from the Crown, received an Augmentation of several Presents, above the usual stated Allowances; among which were four Pair of Spurs, six Pair of Gloves, three Girdles of white Silk, four Pair of Hose or Stockings of brown Cloth, one Saddle *cum arfone albo*, with a white Saddle-bow, a shaving Bason, &c. all which Articles are still used by Knights of the *Bath*, at their Investiture.

In the ^e fifth Year of this Reign, Sir *Walter Manny* had Materials appointed for his Vigils and Bed: This Knight rendered himself most famous, by a Course of martial and brave Exploits, for which he was at length deservedly elected a Companion of the most Noble Order of the *Garter*.

In the ^f two Years succeeding, we find the usual Preparations in favour of several Judges, who were to be created Knights: and in the ^g 21st of the same King, *Maurice Fitz-Thomas* of Ireland, *Philip de Staunton*, and *Thomas de Fencotes* had the like Materials for their

^d Appendix, Numb. 23. ^e Append. Numb. 24.
Numb. 25, 26. ^g Appendix, Numb. 27.

^f Appendix, .

Knighthood on the Day of our Lord's Nativity; afterwards, in the ^b 34th of this Reign, two Judges received also the like Provisions for Knighthood at *Christmas*.

In the 7th Year of ⁱ *Richard* II, two Judges of the *Common Pleas* had the like Furniture for their Knighthood at the same Festival; and in the eleventh ^k Year, Orders were issued for providing the usual Materials for the Knighthood of the two Chief Justices, who were to receive this Degree at *Windsor* on the Feast of *St. George*. In the Twelfth of that Reign, there is a Bill ^l of Account, which mentions the silken Lace, the black Stockings, the white Scabbard for the Sword, a black Saddle with a white Saddle-bow, the pectoral Plate, and the black Bridle for the Horse, &c. all which are still used by Knights of the *Bath*, upon their Creations. And, in the following ^m Year, Directions were given, that Robes should be prepared for the Earls of *March* and of *Stafford*; and for *Alfonfus*, Son of the Count of *Denia* in *Arragon*, with the requisite Provisions for their *Bathing*, and Beds, at the Feast of *St. George*, in the said Year. The Father of this *Alfonfus* having been taken Prisoner in the Battle of *Nazarre*, the Son was sent a *Hostage* into *England*, as Security for his Honour, and Appearance: Our Records and Historians inform us, that he resided here

^b Appendix, Numb. 28. ⁱ Append. Numb. 29. ^k Append. Numb. 30. ^l where, instead of 2 R. 2. should be 11 R. 2. ^m Append. Numb. 31. ⁿ Append. Numb. 32.

for several Years in that Quality, his Father not having taken care to perform the Conditions necessary to his Discharge and Return; yet, during the whole Time of his Residence, though so long protracted; he gave all possible Proof, that he had, with a strict Notion, a most tender and powerful Sense of Honour, and that no Temptation, or Opportunity could ever induce him to entertain a Thought of falsifying his Promise.

The next Extract, to which I refer, is taken from *Froissart* ⁿ, wherein we have an Account of the Knight-hood conferred on the four Kings of *Ireland* by *Richard* the Second, after they had performed their Vigils. The printed Copy represents these Kings as *sitting*, on that Day, at King *Richard's* Table: But, according to a very beautiful ^o Manuscript-Copy of our Historian, curiously embellished with Limnings in the brightest Colours, these *Irish* Potentates *served* that Day at the King's Table; though there is an obvious Method, which may be proposed, for reconciling the seeming Difference between these two Accounts. There are reasonable Grounds to conclude, that these *Irish* Kings, upon their Appearance at the Court of the King of *England*, in order to take this Degree, might, in the Quality of Esquires, according to the Formulary, *serve* up the first Dishes, and when they had the Character

ⁿ Appendix, Numb. 33.

^o In Custody of Mr. Woodman the Bookseller.

of this Knighthood actually conferred on them, were then permitted to have the Honour of *sitting* at Dinner with his Majesty.

We proceed now to consider another Report of *Froissart's*^p, concerning the Coronation of *Henry IV*, which is acknowledged by Mr. ^q*Camden* to be the most ancient Testimony he had found, relating to Knights of the *Bath*: ^rMr. *Selden* adds, “*That the first express Mention of them, as a distinct Order, is commonly attributed to the Beginning of this Reign.*” I shall here render the Words of *Froissart*, recited in the *Appendix*, and from whom we learn, “*That the Vigil before that Coronation, was on the Evening of Saturday, on that Occasion, and at that Time, in the Tower, there watched, saith he, that Night, all the Esquires, who were on the next Morning to be created Knights, to the Number of Forty-six, each of them had his Esquire [attending him] a separate Chamber, and each his separate Bath, where the Rites of Bathing were that Night performed. On the Day following the Duke of Lancaster [Henry IV.] at the Time of celebrating Mass, created them Knights, giving them long green Coats, the Sleeves whereof were cut streight, and furred with Minever, and with great Hoods or Chaperons furred in the same*

^p *Append. Numb. 34.*
p. 678.

^q *Britann. p. 124.*

^r *Titles of Honour,*

“ Manner, and after the Fashion used by Prelates;
 “ and every one of these Knights, on his Left-shoulder,
 “ der, had a double Cordon, or String of white Silk,
 “ to which white Tassels were pendent.”

This Passage, it is granted, tho' not easily accounted for, when we consider Mr. *Camden's* profound Skill in Antiquities, yet, might have been the first, that occurred to his Observation from our Historians, printed in his Time, relating to the *Bathing* of Knights in this Kingdom. But this being admitted, by what Rule of Argumentation could any Person, from these Words of *Froissart* infer, that *Knights of the Bath*, had their first Institution at that Coronation; or from that Period, commenced to be a distinct Order of Knighthood.

An Order, in the large Sense of the Word, is of equivocal, and very indeterminate Signification; it is attributed indifferently to every Degree of Knighthood; and several Records in the *Appendix* confessedly term that Knighthood, wherein Baths were prepared, a military Order, *ordinem Militarem*: But when we speak of an Order, in a strict, or more restrained Sense, according to the Definition, or rather, as I have chosen to express my self, the Description of it, in the Place to which the Reader is here directed; that is, if by an Order, we understand a Brotherhood, Fellowship, or

Association of a certain Number of actual Knights ; subjected under a Sovereign, or *Great Master*, united by particular Laws and Statutes, peculiar to that Society, not only distinguished by particular Habits, Ensigns, Badges, or Symbols, which usually give Denomination to that Order ; but having a Power, as Vacancies happen in their College, successively, of nominating, or electing proper Persons to succeed, with Authority to assemble, and hold Chapters ; according to this State of an Order, it is not easy to be conceived, how any learned Man could ever infer, from the forecited Testimony of *Froissart*, that the Knights of the *Bath* had their Commencement at this Time, as Knights strictly and regularly of a Military Order.

But not to insist upon the ambiguous Signification of Words, or to enter upon a specifick Enquiry here, whether the Knighthood of the *Bath*, was properly an Order of Knighthood at this Time, or in any former Time ; this is certain, from the Authority of unquestionable Records ; that, long before this Time, Provisions were made for the *Baths*, and Coverings of the Baths, prepared at the Creation of Knights.

There is a ^t Record still remaining, which specifies the very Materials delivered from the Wardrobe for these Knights, made at the Coronation of *Henry IV*,

^t Append. Numb. 36.

which were no more, than an Upper-coat of Ruffet for the Vigils, a Mantle of green Tartarin irradiated with Gold, furred with Minever, and Cloth of Gold, termed *Racamatz*, for their Beds, with Linnen of *Brabant*, and *Flanders*, and *Carde*; all which Articles are contained in Words of the same import, in the Accounts of the Wardrobe inserted in the Collections, which were for several Reigns antecedent to the Reign of *Henry IV.*

From this Record, we likewise learn the Names of some of the Persons, who had then this Knighthood of the *Bath* conferred on them.

Thomas, John, and Humfrey, the younger Sons of that King, were then in their Infancy: The * First was born in 1388, the Second in 1389, and the Last in 1390; and this their Father's Coronation was on the Thirteenth^x of *October* 1329.

Mr. *Sandford* saith, That the eldest Son of the King, was then likewise created a Knight of the *Bath*, which must be a Mistake; for I may affirm, with assurance, upon good Grounds, though I cannot distinctly recollect my Authority for my Assertion, that this most heroick Prince received the Honour of Knighthood from *Rhichard II.* in *Ireland.*

* MS. in Offic. Arm. inter Cod. Norf. n. 48.

^x Rot. Parl. 1 H. 4. n. 61.

^y *Gener. Hist.* p. 267.

There were likewise several of the Nobility then promoted to the same Dignity, whose Names are recited in this Instrument; but the Time, to which I have limited my self, doth not permit me to make such distinct Inquiry, as may precisely determine their respective Ages: and for the same Reason I have not, in the former Part of this *Introduction*, descended to specify the Ages of those Noblemen who were honoured with this Degree. However, I think proper, incidentally, to take notice, from a Circumstance, which leaves no Room for Doubt, or Uncertainty, that the Earl of *Arundel*, the First of the Noblemen here mentioned, who were not Princes of the Blood, was at this Time only fourteen Years old; for, upon the Death of his ^zMother, in the sixth Year of this King's Reign, he was in the twentieth Year of his Age.

The Record concludes, by naming Sir *Beaumont*, with Thirty-three Knights besides, then created; though, the Names of these Knights are not inserted; which Omission *Hollinghead* hath, in some Measure, supplied ^a. And here it may not be improper for me to remark, that besides the legal and customary Fees, which Knights of the *Bath* were obliged to pay to the Heraldick Officers; the King himself, by Way of *Largesse*, out of his Royal Munificence, ordered a certain

^z Esch. 6 H. 6. n. 31.

^a Append. Numb. 35.

^b Sum

Sum^b to be distributed among them, for their Attendance at the Solemnity of creating these Knights; and we find the like^c Orders issued by the Kings his Successors.

At the^d Coronation of *Henry V*, we have a particular Detail of the Ceremonies used in creating Knights of the *Bath*; of which, a Translation is here exhibited. “ In the Year 1413, in the twenty-sixth Year “ of the Age of *Henry V*, on a *Friday*, which preceded the *Sunday* before the *Passion* [Week], all “ the Requisites for his Coronation having been prepared by the Direction of his Ministers, according “ to the ancient, and laudable Rites, and Usages of “ the Kingdom: The King, accompanied with a noble and numerous Train of Lords Spiritual, and “ Temporal, set forward from his Palace of *Kingston* “ upon *Thames*, towards the *Tower of London*: he was “ met on the Way by a great Number of Earls, Barons, Knights, Esquires, and other his Subjects of “ Condition; particularly, the Citizens of *London*; “ who made a splendid, and handsome Appearance; “ sparing no Expence, whereby they might testify their “ Zeal and Exultation, while the Clergy made a regular Procession, with much Solemnity. The King, “ in this Manner, and under so many Marks of Ho-

b Appendix, Numb. 36.
d Append. Numb. 37.

c Appendix, Numb. 45. 47.

“ nour, was conducted to the *Tower of London*; where,
 “ about fifty gallant young Gentlemen, or more, of
 “ noble Birth, well qualified, to receive the Degree
 “ of Knighthood, waited in expectation, that they
 “ might receive this Honour from the Hands of so
 “ great a Monarch, at the first opening of so glo-
 “ rious a Solemnity. These young Candidates, be-
 “ ing decently habited in their proper Vestments, to
 “ express the more Honour to the King at so grand
 “ a Feast, to which nothing requisite for the Magni-
 “ ficence of it was wanting; and while his Majesty in
 “ royal State, as became his Dignity, was attended
 “ by the great Lords; those Candidates, in Testimo-
 “ ny, that they should not be obliged at any Time
 “ future, to do the like Service in the Habit of Esquires,
 “ served up the Dishes at this royal Festival, accord-
 “ ing to the received Usage: and, immediately, af-
 “ ter the Entertainment was concluded, they retired
 “ to an Apartment appointed and prepared for that
 “ Use; where Dukes, Earls, Barons, and honourable
 “ Knights, as their Counsellors, or Directors, instru-
 “ cted them concerning their proper Rules of Beha-
 “ viour upon their Accession to this venerable Order;
 “ and with much prudent, and forcible Persuasion,
 “ taught them what they ought to do, if they would
 “ faithfully discharge the proper Duties of it. The
 “ young Candidates, according to Custom, at a con-
 “ venient Time prescribed, went into the *Baths* pre-
 “ pared

“ pared severally for them, performing their Vigils,
 “ and the other Rites, and Exercises preparatory to
 “ this Degree, regularly, with Assiduity, and an in-
 “ tense Degree of pious Zeal. The whole Night ha-
 “ ving been devoted to these Lucubrations, early the
 “ next Morning, upon the first Appearance of Light,
 “ these Candidates, having given the rich golden Beds,
 “ wherein they had reposed themselves in the Night,
 “ to some domestick Servants of the King’s House-
 “ hold, as their customary Fee, proceeded to hear
 “ Mass; and when they had gone regularly through
 “ the Course of their Devotion, having mounted their
 “ fine Horses, they rode, in their rich silk Mantles, ’till
 “ they came to the Gate of the Royal Palace; where,
 “ descending from their Horses, each of them, being
 “ supported by two Knights, and conducted with all
 “ proper Marks of Honour, and Respect, suitable to
 “ his different Quality, was introduced, and present-
 “ ed to the King; who, sitting in royal State, the
 “ Throne being surrounded with a numerous Train of
 “ noble and great Personages, promoted them sever-
 “ ly to the Honour of Knighthood: After their In-
 “ vestiture, they were permitted to sit down in their
 “ rich silk Mantles in the King’s Presence; but did
 “ not, during the whole Time of Dinner, taste
 “ any Part of the Entertainment. After the roy-
 “ al Feast was concluded, the young Knights di-
 “ vesting themselves of their Mantles, put on rich

“ Robes, being the King’s *Livery* of the same *Suite* ;
 “ and when the King, in the Vigil of the *Sunday* be-
 “ fore *Passion-Week*, rode to *Westminster*, in much State
 “ and solemn Order, attended with a great Concourse
 “ of Princes and Noblemen, as became the Grandeur of
 “ so potent a Monarch ; all these young Knights pre-
 “ ceded the King, riding on their Horses in admi-
 “ rable Order, through the Middle of the City, and
 “ made so delightful an Appearance, that all the Spec-
 “ tators seemed to be inebriated with Joy.”

Every one of the particular Rites here expressed,
 perfectly agrees with the Ceremonial now in use ; and
 from that Use, as from the former Quotation about
Geffery of Anjou, and another, that will be inserted re-
 lating to the young King of *Sicily* ; we learn, that the
 Habits of Esquires were different from those of
 Knights : And it seems to be also here intimated, that
 these Candidates had Knights appointed to instruct
 them, which were of their own respective, and pro-
 per Degrees ; because we find such Office of Instruction,
 promiscuously imposed upon Dukes, Earls, Barons,
 and Knights, and severally exercised by them ; of
 which Practice, Precedents are inserted in the *Appen-
 dix*.

e I may, on some future Occasion, make a Disquisition concerning these Distinctions, in this and foreign Kingdoms ; but, to prevent too great an Interruption in the Course of these Remarks, I shall now only refer the Reader to the Sumptuary Laws.

It may contribute to gratify the Reader's Curiosity, if I should here descend to take Notice, concerning the Prohibition, imposed on a Knight, of not eating; the first Instance whereof, in this *Introduction*, occurs from the Passage before us. The Words containing this Prohibition in the Ceremonial, both *French* and *English*, express, that he ought not to eat or drink, but under the Restraint of a Bride, upon the Day of her Marriage. This Rule, as it relates to the other Sex, appears to have been more peculiarly adapted to the native Innocency, and simple Manner of former Ages: It may not be unentertaining to cite a Passage from *† Chaucer*, upon this Occasion, which discovers how reserved, and modest, the Comportment of our *English* Ladies was, in his Time.

The Names of the Knights then created, may be collected from the *g* Record of the Wardrobe; and the preparatory Materials for their Creation were, according to usual Precedents, delivered out of that Office.

This King, in the *b* fifth Year, or rather, according to more exact Computation, in the Sixth, promoted

f *The Merchants Tale of the Marriage of January with May, v. 1375.*

but fresh May

Holdith hir Chamber unto the fourth Day,

As usage is of Wivis for the best, &c.

v. 1405.

A Custom is unto these Noblis all,

A Bride shall not eten in the Hall,

Till Dayes four, other thre at the leste

Ypassid bin, then let her go to Feste.

g Appendix, Numb. 38.

b Appendix, Numb. 39.

several Persons to the Knighthood of the *Bath*, whilst he was in *Normandy*, on the Anniversary Feast of *St. George*.

In his ⁱ ninth Year, upon the same Anniversary, at *Windsor*, he conferred the like Dignity upon the King of *Scotland*, and upon the Earl of *Stafford*. This King was *James*, the *First* of the Name, in that ancient Monarchy; who, in the ninth Year of his Age, 1406, whilst his Father was yet living, being sent toward *France*, in order to his Education, was taken in the Voyage by the *English*, and brought into this Kingdom; where he was detained, for the Space of eighteen Years.

This is the last Account, from the Wardrobe, to which I have referred, in the *Appendix*; though a much greater Number of Precedents might have been cited, from that Office, if the Occasion of my treating, professedly, upon this Subject, had been foreseen. But when I perused the Records of the Wardrobe, having no Design of collecting from them, any Informations, but what related to the *History of the most Noble Order of the GARTER*, I only made Extracts of such Memoirs, as had some more special, and direct Reference to that Undertaking.

After the Demise of this most victorious King, we find, in the Inventory and ^k Appraisement of the

ⁱ Appendix, Numb. 40.

^k Appendix, Numb. 41.

Goods, which he devised for Payment of his Debts, an Article, specifying *Tartarin* irradiated, for the Habit of Knights of the *Bath*.

Henry the Sixth was ^lborn on the Festival of *St. Nicholas*, in *December* 1421, and on *Whitsunday* 1426, he was knighted ^m by his Uncle the Duke of *Bedford*, who had himself been created Knight of the *Bath* in the ⁿ first Year of his Father's Reign. This Record, indeed, according to the Letter of it Imports, that a Summons was issued to several Persons, requiring their Appearance, in order to their being knighted with the King, without descending to specify the particular Degree of Knighthood, which was then to be conferred: But that these Persons here summoned, had really the Knighthood, of the *Bath* conferred on them, may be concluded from what hath been observed ^o before, concerning the Practice in the like Cases. For here some of these Mandates were immediately directed to the Guardians of young Gentlemen, who were in Wardship, and others to the Parents of young Persons of noble Birth, to attend, in pursuance of such Summons, to receive Knighthood: So that according to my former Conjecture, for I only call it so, tho' it hath so many strong Appearances of Probability and Truth, whenever Letters Missive to the like effect were

^l Walsingham, p. 406.
Numb. 36.

^m Append. Numb. 42.
^o See above, p. 24, 25, 26.

ⁿ Appendix,

thus sent by the Crown on solemn Occasions, and at royal Feasts, directly to the Persons, or to the Guardians of those, who were in their Minority to command their Appearance, in order to their being knighted, and not by the Intervention of Writs to the Sheriffs; which Practice will be confirmed by several Instances in the Sequel; It is again concluded, that Knights created at such solemn Festivals, in pursuance of such Summons, were of a different Degree of Knighthood, from Knights made in pursuance of Writs directed to the Sheriff; which was the Thing to be proved.

Notwithstanding this late Creation, about two Years, and six Months afterward, there were Thirty-two, others say, Thirty-four Knights of the *Bath* made, at the ^p Coronation of this King.

The Serjeant of the Ewery, who had exercised the Office of a Barber, at the Gate of the Royal Palace, and enjoyed the Profits appertaining to that Office, preferred a Petition to the Crown, in the Twenty-fifth Year of this Reign; and, upon his Petition, that Employment was confirmed to him, and to another Person, with all appendent Advantages, together, as it is expressed in the ^q Patent, with the Fees payable by those, who should be created Knights of the *Bath*; that is, “ from
“ every Knight twenty-four Ells of Linnen-cloth;

^g Appendix, Numb. 43.

^b Append. Numb. 44.

“ which

“ which was to be placed about the Bathing-Vessel ;
 “ with a Tapet, or Carpet of red Worsted ; and twen-
 “ ty Shillings for shaving him ; forty Shillings from
 “ every Baron, or his *Peer* ; one hundred Shillings from
 “ every Earl, or his *Peer* ; and ten Pounds from every
 “ Duke, or his *Peer*, severally, on the same Ac-
 “ count.”

It hath been formerly ^r observed, that in the Directions to the Wardrobe, for preparing Materials, at the Creation of these Knights, it is provided there should be a Distinction in the Habits, according to the different Qualities of the Candidates to be created Knights ; and that, which was an Act of pure arbitrary Favour from the Crown, Habits of superior Distinction, should be given to Persons, for which their Quality could not, regularly, or directly, entitle them ; and yet, on whom that Mark of Favour was conferred, as if they had been really, and actually, qualified by such Titles to receive it ; which Remark may serve to render more intelligible the Meaning of the Specifications already mentioned, *tanquam pro Banneretto ; tanquam pro Comite, &c.* whereby it might be imported, that these Persons were, on the Occasion, considered, as equal, or *Peers* ; and accordingly, vested in such Habits, though they were not really and legally of the same Degree : and the same Remark may, in some measure, serve also to ex-

^r See above, p. 27.

plain these Entries, in the forecited Patent, *Peers* to a Duke, to an Earl, and to a Baron; to which it may be farther added, that though the eldest Son of a Duke hath no Claim to the Right of Peerage in Parliament; yet he is, by his Birth, entitled to precede an Earl; as the eldest Sons of Earls precede Barons; and therefore the Sons of the higher Nobility, with reference to this Degree of Knighthood, may be esteemed Peers to the lower Distinctions of Nobility; accordingly, the eldest Sons of the higher Nobility, invested with this Degree of Knighthood, paid Fees to the Heralds, in some stated Proportion, according to the Precedence due to their Birth: For example, the ^f Son to the Marquess of *Dorset* paid fifty Shillings, upon his advancement to this Degree, at the Creation of *Henry* Duke of *York*, when the Barons, then promoted, paid only forty Shillings; and on Account of such Difference in the Habits, the Earl of *Derby* created Knight of the *Bath*, at the Coronation of *Queen Anne Bullen*, in compounding with the Heralds, paid a larger ^t Sum, for his Robe, than the Lord *Vaux* paid, on the same Occasion; and Sir *Thomas Howard*, Son to the Earl of *Surrey*, made Knight of the *Bath* at the Coronation of *Queen Mary*, paid ^u Fees to the Officers of Arms, equal to those paid by the Lords, who were then also created.

^f Append. Numb. 59.
^u Ibid. p. 153 b.

^t *Partition-Book in the Herald's Office*, p. 49, 50.

This Conjecture, which I have here made, and which is proposed only as a Conjecture, seems to me, at present, to give the most specious Account concerning the Distinction of *Peers* to Earls, and *Peers* to Barons: As to the other Branch of the Distinction in the Patent, *Peers* to Dukes; it may probably denote the younger Sons of the Blood-Royal, who might have this Dignity conferred on them, antecedently to their Creation, by Patent, to any determinate Title of Peerage. The three ^x younger Sons, for Instance, of *Henry* the Fourth, were created Knights of the *Bath*, before any one of them was actually possessed of such Title of Peerage.

Upton, a Writer of great Knowledge, Reputation, and Authority, in Affairs relating to Heraldry, and the Rules of conferring Knighthood, flourished in this Reign; and he expressly ^y recites this Method of creating Knights by *Bathing*, and gives a Description of a white Ensign [Stigma] as it may be rendered; which, he saith, the new-created Knight was to wear, 'till he should perform some gallant Exploit, in case no Lady, before that time, or when no opportunity for signaling his Prowess might intervene, should, by a gentle Violence, pluck that Badge of Probation away from him. It is observable, that the Passage, upon which I am now reflecting, supposes, that the Wearing this

x Appenlix, Numb. 36.

y Append. Numb. 46.

white Ensign, was agreeable to the antient established Custom in *England*, and is, as he saith, particularly enjoined in the *Ceremonial*, “*uti docet Consuetudo Angliæ*,” to which may be added another memorable Circumstance from him, that this Knighthood was conferred, in Time of Peace, “*ubi regnat Pax* ;” in which Observation he might probably have an Eye to the Title of the Treatise in the *French* Language hereafter quoted, and inserted in the *Appendix*, concerning the Form of creating Knights of the *Bath*. I shall also endeavour, in the Sequel, to prove, that this very Formulary hath in it certain Characters, which shew, it was compiled, and perhaps for some considerable Time before the Age, wherein *Upton* wrote.

We shall now proceed to the Facts, which I have thought most proper to select, in reference to the present Subject, that occur in the Reign of *Edward IV*, at whose ^z Coronation in *June* 1461, his Brothers, the Duke of *Clarence*, and *Gloucester*, were, with several other Persons of Distinction, created Knights of the *Bath*, in the *Tower*. The Duke of *Clarence* was then in the twelfth, and the Duke of *Gloucester* only in the ninth Year of his Age ; the Former was ^a born in *Ireland* on the 22d of *October* 1449 ; the Younger, at *Fodringay*^b on the 2d of *October* 1452 ; and, in the

^z Append. Numb. 47.
n. 48. ^b Ibid.

^a MS. in Offic. Armor. inter Cod. Norf.

Rites of this Ceremony, we have a specifick Account of their wearing white silk Tokens, or Laces, on their Shoulders, besides their Gowns, and Hoods.

Scarce three Years were expired, before a new Creation was solemnized on occasion of Crowning the Queen-Consort, when two ^c Noblemen of *Gascoign* had this Dignity conferred on them; a Dignity received with such Ostentation of State, and Magnificence, that a special Provision was made in the ^d Statute against giving Liveries, that it should not however extend to the Creation of Knights of the *Bath*.

In the ^e Regulation of the Household, settled by this King, there are References to the Fees, which arise, as due from the Knights of the *Bath* at their creation, both to the heraldick Officers, and to the Service of the *Wait*, who attended their Vigils.

This King, in the fifteenth Year of his Reign 1475, made a very ^f magnificent Promotion of his two Sons, the Prince of *Wales*, and the Duke of *York*. The Prince had not, at that Time, completed the fifth Year of his Age, and the Duke is said by Mr. ^g *Sandford* to have been born on the 28th Day of *May* 1474, by ^h others on the 17th of *August* 1472; at this Promotion *Thomas Gray*, then Earl of *Huntington*, the Son of the

^c Appendix, Numb. 48.

^d Appendix, Numb. 49.

^e Append. Numb. 50.

^f Append. Numb. 51.

^g *Geneal. Hist.* p. 415.

^h *Collect.* Thinne, Lancaster, B. 2. penes me, p. 292.

Queen-Confort by her first Husband, had the Knight-hood of the *Bath* conferred on him, and after he was actually, and really invested with that Dignity, the King immediately created him Marquess of *Dorset*; and then he had the Privilege of sitting at Dinner, in the Robes of that Estate, above the other Habits appropriated to the Degree of the *Bath*. At the same time, several Persons of the first Distinction, and in the highest Favour at Court, were advanced to this Honour, whose Names will be found in the *i Appendix*: But it ought here to be particularly observed, the King, at the Time of conferring this Honour upon them, did himself personally condescend to instruct them in the Nature and Duties of it; and this Precedent was followed in several *k Creations* under the Reigns of succeeding Kings.

The Reader may likewise find in the *l Appendix*, the Names of those who were created Knights of the *Bath*, when the Marriage of the Duke of *York*, the younger Son of *Edward IV*, with the Daughter and Heiress of the Duke of *Norfolk*, was solemnised. The next Instrument regularly, in order of Time, should have been inserted before, under the fourth Year of this King's Reign; it reports the *m Sentence* given against Sir *Ralph Gray*, by which he was degraded from his

i Append. Numb. 51.
l Appendix, Numb. 52.

k Appendix, Numb. 56. 58, 59, 60.
m Appendix, Numb. 53.

Character, as Knight of the *Bath*; for he is so expressly stiled, in a ^m Copy which I have, of the Proceedings in that Case, but which would, if transcribed here at length, take up a greater Space than my present Design of Brevity will allow: however, I shall occasionally observe, there is no Expression used, or any Intimation given of his Perjury and Doubling with *Henry VI*, as he is charged by the Memorial entred in the Year-Books of the Law. I have not yet been able to discover the determinate Time, when he was advanced to this Degree, but it is highly probable, it was at some Solemnity in the Reign of that Prince, to whose Cause he at last sacrificed his Life, Fortune, and Honour.

We come now to the Reign of *Edward* the Fifth, when a Design was formed, or rather an Appearance of such a Design projected by the Duke of *Gloucester*, who, during the King's Minority, was constituted Protector of the Realm, for the King's Coronation on the Twenty-second of *June*, and accordingly ⁿ Summons, bearing date on the Fifth of that Month, were issued immediately, and separately to such Persons, whose Names are recited in the *Appendix*, to appear at the Time appointed, that the Degree of Knighthood might be then conferred on them: In which Summons, no mention, indeed, is made of Knighthood of the *Bath*;

^m I. 12. penes me, p. 556.

ⁿ Appendix, Numb. 54.

yet it is evident, that Degree must have been here particularly intended, because Writs, dated on the twentieth Day of *May*, issued to all the Sheriffs of *England*, for obliging all Persons, whose Estates rendered them liable to be summoned for that End, to take the Degree of Knighthood; that is, of common or simple Knighthood upon them, on the eighth Day of *June*. This Writ, I say, to the Sheriffs, was dated on the twentieth Day of *May*; and as it bears a different Date, requires a different Return, and is directed to the Sheriffs, whose Authority only extended, and could only extend, in a legal Way, to summon Persons of full Age, who had Estates to the annual Value of forty Pounds, to accept simple or common Knighthood: We conclude, as in other Cases of the like ^o circumstance, that the former Summons respected a different Degree of Knighthood, which could be no other, on any reasonable, or indeed any possible Supposition, than the Knighthood of the *Bath*: And what is here observed, will still be more fully confirmed by the Practice, upon the Accession of succeeding Princes to the Throne; from which it will appear, that besides the Writs issued to the Sheriffs in general, to oblige Persons qualified by their Tenures, to appear, and accept Knighthood, there were separate Summons sent immediately to Persons, who are therein expressly, and by Name designed to be crea-

ted Knights of the *Bath*, at their respective Coronations.

But the *Protector*, whether he had originally any real Design, that his Nephew *Edward* the Fifth should be crowned at the Time appointed; or whether he only dissembled an Intention to that End, to amuse the People, to gain Time, or to render his Design less suspected, 'till they should be more ripe for Execution; whether he was actuated by any of these Motives, or by all of them, in giving Notice of the Time proposed for the King's Coronation; this is certain, that being instigated by a Spirit of Ambition, if a cruel, and bloody Attempt against all Obligations of Religion, of Honour, of natural Affection, and common Humanity, may be called by so soft a Name, he became soon resolved to prevent his Nephew's Coronation on the 22d of *June*, by previously taking Possession himself of the Throne, and that too in his own pretended Right, on the 18th of the same Month.

And as he had invaded the Crown, so, at his own Coronation, according to the usual Custom and Form, he exercised this Act of the Royal Prerogative in creating Knights of the *Bath*, and the Names of those created by him may be found, under the Reference here made to the *p Appendix*.

In the succeeding Reign of *Henry VII*, we shall produce Instances, from which it will appear, that at the Creation of Knights of the *Bath*, at different Times, there was much Solemnity, and several grand Rites used, which will afford Matter for useful, and curious Reflections. This potent and wise Prince, had so great a Notion concerning the Dignity of this Knighthood, that none of our Monarchs his Predecessors, or Successors, seem to have conferred it in a more solemn, exact, or magnificent Manner, or by more signal Acts of a personal Administration. At his Coronation, the young Duke of *Buckingham* was created Knight of the *Bath*, with several other great Personages. In the third Year of that Reign, when the Queen was crowned, there was the like Creation of Knights of the *Bath*, who were called by the *Kings moost Honourable Lettres to receyve the Order of Knyghthood*, and there it is immediately expressed, that they *were created Knyghts of the Bath*; whose Names, with those of the Esquires-Governours appointed to attend them, may be seen in the *r Appendix*.

The King having an Intention to create *Arthur*, his eldest Son, Prince of *Wales*, he previously conferred on him the Knighthood of the *Bath*, on the 20th Day of *December* 1489, when his *Age* did not exceed

q Append. Numb. 56. *r* Appendix, Numb. 57. *f* *Definitions in*
Lord Herbert's Hist. of Hen. 8. p. 271.

thereon three Years and three Months. We have a Catalogue of the Names of the Persons promoted at the same Time to this Degree, with a 'Detail of several Ceremonies, and Solemnities used on that Occasion; when the King created a Pursivant for this Prince, by the Title of *Walsingford*, a Castle then belonging to the Prince in Right of his Dutchy of *Cornwall*; and we find a like Precedent by this King, when Knights of the *Bath* were created at his own Coronation; at which Time he instituted a Pursivant by the " Appellation of *Rouge-dragon*: and I have, in ^x another Place, produced several Examples, to shew, that the Sovereigns of this Kingdom, having the Crown on their Heads, in all Royal State, frequently created, and conferred such Officers.

In the tenth Year of *Henry VII*, we have an Account of the Investiture of his younger Son, the Duke of *York*, (afterward *Henry VIII*.) with this Dignity, on the Eve before *All Saints Day* 1494, and the Names of the Persons who were at the same Time created, with their respective Esquires, are recited in the ' *Appendix*. It appears remarkable in this Ceremony, that the Lord *William Courteney*, Son of the Earl of *Devon*, who had himself been created Knight of the *Bath* in

t Appendix, Numb. 58.

u Appendix, Numb. 56.

x *History of the Garter*, p. 459.

y Appendix, Numb. 59.

the ^z third Year of this Reign, should execute the Office of a young Esquire to this Prince; and that a particular Concession was made in favour of the Knights then created, by which they were “*licensed to ett their metts, by-cause hyt was fastyng-day* :” Now, according to the Ceremonial, these Knights ought to have abstained from eating, if it had not been a Fasting-day; and therefore the Reasons of this Permission to eat, because it was a Fasting-day, I readily acknowledge, appear to me, at present, altogether unaccountable. This Prince having been born ^a on the 28th of *June* 1491, was at this Time, in the same Year of his Age, with that of his Brother *Arthur*, when he was promoted to this Degree.

At the Celebration of Prince *Arthur's* Marriage, there was another Creation of Knights, whose Names are contained in the ^b *Appendix*; and the Roll, already quoted, specifies Knights made at the Time, when, after his Death, the King's second Son, *Henry*, was created ^c Prince of *Wales*; and here again it is acknowledged, the Roll doth not stile those Knights, expressly Knights of the *Bath*, but simply Knights, without any Addition; however, it may be reasonably inferred, that these were really Knights of the *Bath*, from the Solemnity of the Occasion, the Dignity of the Persons knight-

^z Appendix, Numb. 57.

^b Append. Numb, 60.

^a Herb. *Hist.* Hen. 8. p. 272, 274.

^c Appendix, Numb. 61.

ed, and the Method of this Rolle, which only mentions Knights made on solemn Occasions, without specifying the particular Degree of Knighthood conferred on them, though they were, as it hath been proved, created Knights of the *Bath*; but there is no necessity of repeating continually, what hath been said in support of this Assertion.

Under the Reign of *Henry VIII*, there were two grand Occasions, the Former, at the Time of his own Coronation, the Other at *that* of his Queen *Anne Bullen*, when Knights of the *Bath* were severally created, whose Names are exhibited in their proper ^d Course. Sometime before his Demise, he designed to create his Son *Edward*, Prince of *Wales*, and proper Dispositions were made for that End; and, previously, he intended to confer the Knighthood of the *Bath* upon him; for which, suitable ^e Apparel was provided; but his Death prevented the Execution of that Design.

Several Persons of the first Quality were nominated, in order to their being regularly promoted to this Honour, at the Coronation of *Edward VI*; but by reason of some Accident, *because the Time* (as it is ^f expressed) *was so short*, the usual Ceremonies were, by Dispensation, omitted; and to supply that Omission, the King having the Crown on his Head, with *greate*

^d Appendix, Numb. 62, 63.
^f Appendix, Numb. 65.

^e Appendix, Numb. 64.

Royaltie knighted them, having himself first received Knighthood from his Uncle the Protector, who was authorised by Letters Patent, under the Great, Seal to confer it.

Upon the Accession of Queen *Mary* to the Throne, a ^g Commission was granted to the Earl of *Arundel*, empowering him to make Knights; but without any additional Title, within two Days after the Date of that Patent, which were the two Days preceding her Coronation; in pursuance hereof, we find the Names of the Knights created by him, according to the stated Form of creating Knights of the *Bath*, and the Variety of the Ceremonies then used, so distinctly related, that it particularly deserves to be consulted in the ^h *Appendix*.

When Queen *Elizabeth* succeeded to the Crown, she granted the like Commission to the same noble Earl, “*to do, and exercise everie thinge, and thinges on hir behalfe to be done and exercised, for the full making of Knightes of the Bath, and of other Knights,*” so they are expressly distinguished. The ⁱ Preamble to this Commission recites, the Reasons upon which the Grant of it was made, and those Reasons are proposed in so good a Light, and supported on such good Grounds, that the Reader, in consulting them, will not find his

^g Appendix, Numb. 66.
ⁱ Appendix, Numb. 69.

^h Appendix, Numb. 67, 68.

Time disagreeably employed. The Names of the Persons advanced to this Dignity, in pursuance of the Commission, will be found in the proper Course in the ^k *Appendix*.

In respect to these Commissions of our Queens-Regent, I have, in another ^l *Treatise*, occasionally mentioned something relating to their Manner of conferring Knighthoods, upon which, I shall not now proceed to enlarge: neither shall I enquire, whether our Kings, who succeeded these two Queens, did not, implicitly, follow the like Method of Proceedure, without reflecting, that such Commissions might be originally owing to the Difference of their Sex, or to certain Reasons of Decency, and Propriety, on that Account. A learned ^m *Jesuit*, indeed, hath asserted, but upon what Authority I cannot conjecture, that *Elizabeth Queen of England, caused her self to be armed on the Day of her Coronation, to be Sovereign of the Orders of Knighthood in England*; neither can I apprehend to what particular Rite, on the Occasion, he intended to refer, as performed by Queen *Elizabeth*, personally, except that of putting on the Spurs, at the Time of her Coronation; the Propriety of which

^k *Appendix*, Numb. 70.

^l *Introdukt. to the Register of the Garter*, p. 34.

^m *Menestrier de la Chevalerie*, p. 114. *la Reine Elizabeth d'Angleterre se fit armer le jour de son couronnement pour estre Chef des Ordres de Chevalerie d'Angleterre.*

Ceremony, in this Case, I am not at leisure here to examine.

From the Ceremonial, as it is described, of the Creation in the Reign of Queen *Mary*, we learn, that the Candidates went into the *Bath* in Linnen-Drawers, or Breeches, according to the Rules of an antient Formulary; that the Queen, with her own Hands, tied on their Swords; which yet was not the determinate Action, that impressed the Character of Knighthood; but the Earl of *Arundel* formally and effectually conferred it, when he executed his Commission by giving the Acollade, or by laying his Hands upon the Shoulders of those, who were designed to be honoured with this Degree; concerning which Practice, it will be necessary to add some explanatory Remarks in the Sequel.

As Queen *Elizabeth* was never married, the Reasons of several publick Creations of Knights of the *Bath*, in former Reigns, did not subsist, during the Time of her Reign; which continuing above forty-five Years, she (as it is ⁿ asserted) survived all the Knights, ^o eleven in Number, upon whom this Honour had been conferred at her Coronation.

When King *James* was crowned, he promoted ^p sixty-two Persons to this Dignity; and in the second Year

ⁿ G. 2. penes me, p. 221. 237.
^o Appendix, Numb. 70.

^p Append. Numb. 71.

of his Reign, his younger Son, then in the ⁹ fourth Year of his Age, was ^r invested with this Degree, previous to his being created Duke of *York*.

It was allowed, that Knights of the *Bath* ought to have Precedency of all Knights-Batchilers, though in order of Time knighted before them in this Reign: But some Knights-Batchilers, formerly created, claimed a Right of preceding them: This Contest occasioned a very elaborate and curious Treatise by ^s Mr. *Thinne*, *Lancaster-Herald*, in answer to the Arguments alledged by the Knights-Batchilers, who insisted on that pretended Right; a Treatise that very well deserves to be made publick; and according to the Argument of which, the Precedency was determined, as rightfully belonging to Knights of the *Bath*.

In the tenth Year of his Reign 1610, when his eldest Son *Henry*, was to be created Prince of *Wales*, there was a general Promotion made of the ^r Knights of the *Bath*, though this Prince himself, it is confessed, never had this Degree actually conferred on him; the Reason of which particular Exception to the general Rule, in respect to Princes, especially to the first Prince of the Blood, most probably was, that Knighthood might have been conferred on him at the Time of his

⁹ Appendix, Numb. 74.

^r Appendix, Numb. 73.

^s G. 2. penes me, p. 196, &c.

^t Appendix, Numb. 75.

Baptism, according to the "antient Custom of *Scotland*, when " he was crowned and created Prince and " Great Steward of *Scotland*, Duke of *Rosay*, Earl of " *Carrick*, Lord of the *Ilis*, and Baron and ^x *Knight* of " *Renfrew*."

And because different Writers frequently remark the Rites observ'd in publick Solemnities, after a different Manner, so that we frequently find several Circumstances particularly related by one of them, which are only in general transiently mentioned, or perhaps wholly omitted by another, I thought it might not be improper to refer the Reader to several ^y different Narratives, concerning that particular Solemnity, which is the Subject of our present Inquiry: But I have not now an opportunity to examine, whether the Order of Precedency, in the Return of this Procession, as related by *Mr. Stow*, was perfectly agreeable to ancient Usage.

Upon the Death of Prince *Henry*, his Brother *Charles* Duke of *York* (afterwards *Charles* the First) was, with much Solemnity, created Prince of *Wales*, when several ^z Persons were promoted to the Knighthood of the *Bath*, and there was the like Investiture after his Suc-

^u See *Scotichron.* l. 16. c. 6. which was also the Practice in France. *Annótat. sur l'Hist. de Ch.* 6. p. 532, and in *Burgundy*, *Pont. Heuter.* l. 15. *Rever. Burgund.*

^x *Rymeri Fœd.* Vol. 15, p. 263.

^y *Appendix*, Numb. 75, 76, 77, 78.

^z *Appendix*, Numb. 79.

cession to the ^a Crown in *February* 1625. In the End of the Year 1637, he ^b appointed that his eldest Son the Prince, afterwards *Charles* King of *England*, the Second of that Name, should, on the thirty-first Day of *May* following, be advanced to this Dignity, before his Election into the Fellowship of the *Garter*, and the ^c Register of that Order mentions his Election on that very Day, but seems, indeed, to imply, that the Degree of Knight-Batchiler, only, was then conferred on him.

Soon afterward the Rebellion and Civil War broke out, putting all Things in a State of the utmost Disorder: and although the very Title of the Formulary seems to imply, that this Degree of Knighthood was only to be conferred in Time of Peace; yet, if what is asserted by a ^d *French* Writer of Character, upon Subjects of Nobility, Titles, and other Adjuncts of Honour, may be of any Authority, *James* Duke of *York*, afterward King of *England*, and the Second of that Name, was created Knight of the *Bath*. But he was certainly elected Companion of the *Garter* at *York*, on the 20th of *April* 1642, the Morning after the last annual Festival of *St. George*, celebrated before the Restoration of King *Charles* the Second, upon which that Monarch restored this Dignity of Knighthood of the *Bath*,

^a Appendix. Numb. 80.

^b Appendix, Numb. 82.

^c Appendix. Numb. 83.

^d De la Roque Traite de la Noblesse, p. 351.

and, previously to his being crowned, ^e created sixty-eight Knights of that Denomination.

III. The Dignity of this Degree may, in general, be concluded, from the pious, the beneficial, and other most excellent Ends of its Institution, which have been already specified: But that we may be able to form still a more adequate, and distinct Judgement in the Case, it may be convenient to proceed upon a summary Consideration of the following Particulars, concerning the solemn Times, Places, and Rites of conferring it, as well as Persons, on whom it hath been peculiarly conferred.

1. Our Monarchs, to do the greater Honour to this Degree, and which may serve to give us a more just Idea concerning the Dignity of it, have chosen the most publick, the most splendid, and joyful Occasions for creating Knights of the *Bath*. This Act of Royal Grace hath been usually display'd upon the Coronation, and Marriage of our Kings; the Coronation of both Queens-Regents and Queens-Consorts; the Birth, and Marriage of the Royal Issue, and their first Advancement to Honours; upon the designed Expeditions by our Kings against their foreign Enemies; upon Installations into the *Most Noble Order of the G A R T E R*,

and when some grand Anniversary-Festivals were celebrated.

2. The Place, where our Princes have conferred this Honour, was always inseparably, and necessarily annexed, on that Occasion, to the Palace, or within the Verge of the Court, where they resided. And for the greater Solemnity of their Action in conferring it, and to shew the high Importance, and Design of it, the Ceremonies, so far as they respected the Ends of Religion, were solemnized in some Chappel or Church dedicated to the Honour, and appropriated to the Worship of God.

3. But besides these Circumstances of Time, and Place, both which are, without doubt, designedly adapted to the Nature of the Action performed in them; the Manner of creating Knights of the *Bath*, hath several Things in it of more peculiar Consideration, which may be proper still to heighten our Esteem for so antient, and honourable an Institution.

The moral Signification of the several Rites used in creating Knights of the *Bath*, will be considered under a distinct Section in the Sequel. What I shall at present observe, concerning those Rites, only relates to the Lustre, the Importance, and Number of them. In the former respect, they participate with several Ceremonies immemorially used at the Coronation of our Kings; such are the Bath, the Buskins, the Coif, the

Spurs, the Gloves, the Sword, the Oath, the Robes, &c. and probably from thence, as Circumstances varied, these particular Usages, in reference to the Creation of these Knights, did originally take their Rise, and Direction; and consequently, if any Objection should therefore be pretended against them, such Objection would be founded, not in their Want of Splendor, and Dignity, but rather in their exceeding on these Accounts.

The Importance of these Rites, is not less considerable. The personal Administration of the King, when he is present, or at least his virtual Presence under some delegated Authority, in assisting at the Ceremonial by a Train of Actions, peculiar to his Royal Majesty, necessarily contribute to augment the State and Grandeur of the Solemnity; and the great Officers of the Sovereign's Household, received the Candidates to be created Knights of the *Bath*, at their first coming to the Court, who were afterwards successively conducted through a Ceremonial, as we shall presently see, of a various, and elaborate Process.

I need not here proceed to shew, that in proportion, as greater Solemnities are used, in the Designation of a Person to any Office, the more Honour is always, upon a natural Presumption, intended to be done to him, when such Office is conferred. If this be a known Rule, in ordinary Promotions to any Civil Character, or Employment, it will hold still stronger,

ger, when such Ceremonies are performed, which al-
lude principally to those, that have been celebrated,
when Sovereign Princes were invested with the Rights
of their Regalities; or such, as have some visible Rela-
tion to any sacred, and instituted Rite, or Rites of re-
ligious Worship.

It may be proper therefore to take notice, that the
greater Ceremony, from which the Knighthood of the
Bath is denominated; and which, we must therefore
suppose, was instituted with a peculiar Design of re-
presenting the Dignity of it, hath the like Foundation,
as to the moral Design of it, with the great, and sa-
cred Ordinance, by which we are initiated into the
Faith, and Profession of our Holy Religion. And it
is not improbable, that as *Bathing* was intended, in
the allegorical Construction of it, to denote the inward
Purgation and future Purity of the Mind; so, the Oc-
casion of applying it, in that Sense, might be origi-
nally taken from a Consideration of the baptismal
Grace, and Efficacy; for the Origin of this civil In-
stitution may, for the Reason here mentioned, be much
more probably derived from the Christian Religion,
than from the Lustrations of the Heathens, with whom,
it is yet allowed, *Bathing* was used, as one of their re-
ligious Solemnities.

The Distinction, indeed, or proper Character of all
Things is known, and can only be known by the dif-
ferent Forms, under which Things appear: There is

no other Reason to be assigned of the different Degrees of Nobility, but from the different Manner, according to which Nobility was at first originally created, or hath been since successively derived: Were it not for certain external Signatures, whereby Persons and Things are known from other Persons and Things, there could be no particular or distinct Knowledge, in either respect.

But of all Distinctions, none are more visibly adapted, and universally understood to represent, or signify, what is intended by them, than those, which are known by different Habits: It is therefore a received Maxim, “ The Quality, and Dignity of the Person to be distinguished, is demonstrated from the different Habit appropriated to him.” And for this Reason, I may, on some future Occasion, descend to a more particular Consideration of the Robes, and other Marks of Distinction appropriated to Knights of the *Bath*, with some occasional Remarks, concerning the particular Reasons of such Appropriations; contenting myself, at present, by adding, that in the Church of *Wath* in *Yorkshire*, upon the ^f Monument of Sir *John Norton*, created Knight of the *Bath* at the Marriage of Prince *Arthur*, and who died on the 28th of *August* 1520. He was represented by his Portraiture, having over his Armour, the Mantle, and Gloves hanging thereat, as

they were used at the Time of his Creation, and with a Cross upon each Knee, which will be hereafter explained.

I shall only make transient Mention here, that these Robes were delivered by the King's special Warrants, at the Expence of the Crown, as an additional Circumstance, to shew another considerable Character of Distinction, in respect to the Dignity, and Honour of this Degree; and I shall here incidentally take the Liberty of repeating, that as a Mark of a more honorary Impress upon this Act of Royal Grace, Knights of the *Bath* are summoned, in order to their Creation, by the King's Letters, or special Missive Writs immediately directed to them for that Purpose.

As the greater Solemnity of any particular Ceremony doth, according the Tenour of the foregoing Argument, demonstrate the greater Dignity of the Action, to which such Ceremony is appropriated; so the Dignity of such Action must necessarily be presumed to arise in proportion, as a greater Number of solemn concurring Circumstances is previously required to the Performance of it: The Rule in this Case, *The more Ceremony, the more State*, needs no Comment; especially, where the Sovereign himself appears, or is understood to appear in all the Splendor, and Majesty of the State-Royal: And therefore, though all Honour is ultimately derived from him, as the sole Fountain of Honour; yet, every Dignity conferred by him, receives

ceives an additional Lustre, as it is more expressive, or understood to be more expressive, of the Royal Favour, from the Circumstances of conferring it.

I come now to make some Reflections upon the Manner and Act of conferring this Knighthood; and it will appear, there hath not been any Method, or Form of Rites in conferring Knighthood in any Age, or any Part of the World, wherein one Ceremony or other was used, which separately conveyed Knighthood of a different Kind, that is not particularly, and conjunctly retained in conferring the Knighthood of the *Bath*; such was the Investiture with the Military Belt, the Cincture of the Sword, the Placing the Spurs, the Blow upon the Neck, the Acollade, with the Embracing, and Kiss of Peace. Indeed, the Ceremony, by which Bannerets were created, in cutting the *Guidon* into the Form of a Square, could not, with any Propriety, be used in creating Knights of the *Bath*, as it was a Military Action always performed in Time of War, where Banners were displayed.

The Time to which I have confined my self, doth not permit me to explain these several Methods of conveying Knighthood in distinct Ages, and Countries: But, to satisfy the Curiosity of those, who may have a Desire to know, what is the precise, and determinate Action, by which Knighthood of the *Bath* is ultimately, and compleatly conveyed, I shall take the
present

present Occasion to repeat, that the Action which fully and finally impresses the Character of Knighthood in this Degree, is, the Blow given with the Hand upon the Neck or Shoulder. The Reader by the ^b Reference in the Margin, will find, that it hath been controverted between some foreign Writers, whether the Stroke, which impressed the Character of Knighthood, was heretofore given with a Sword, or by the bare Hand upon the Neck.

At the Creation of Knights of the *Bath*, it was also usual to make simple Knights, or Knights-Batchillers; which was done solely by the Stroke with a Sword, who are therefore, in some Ceremonials, termed Knights of the ^a *Sword*; and in others, Knights of the ^b *Carpet*. And it should not be omitted, that Persons of the greatest Quality, and particularly a ^c Son of the King of *Portugal*, have taken upon them that Degree, on the Occasion, when Knights of the *Bath* were created. And it is accordingly observable, that in the ^d Commissions issued for creating Knights of the *Bath*, previous to the later Coronations, there was a Clause, which not only gave Powers to that End, but *also to make, and ordain other Persons Knights.*

^g See above. p. 62. ^b Du Fresno, Gloss. v. Alapa Military.

^a Claudius, C. 3. in Bibl. Cotton in several Places.

^b Usually to be found in the Lists.

^c Append. Numb. 43. ^d Append. Numb. 69. 72. &c.

The Knighthood of the *Bath* being more antient than any of the Religious, or Civil Military Orders, which were not founded before the ^e Twelfth Century; there are good Grounds to infer, that several Rites in those Orders might, in succeeding Times, owe their Origin to this Institution: And it might be a proper Subject of Enquiry, whether there is any one of these Orders that was not primarily formed upon the Model of it. As to the Religious Military Orders, it is evident, the Method of ^a admitting a Member into the Fraternity of the Knights-*Hospitallers*, one of the most antient Societies of this kind, had an apparent Assimilation with the Rites used in constituting a Knight of the *Bath*. And as the Ceremonies in creating Knights of the *Bath*, seem to be derived, in several Respects, from the Forms used in the Coronations of our Sovereigns; so several Princes, from this Institution of Knighthood, have probably taken Hints, or certain exemplary Projects, upon which they have erected their Civil Military Orders. I shall not enter upon a particular Discussion, whether even the royal and magnificent Founder of the most Noble Order of the *Garter*, might not, in certain Instances, copy from this Precedent; but I shall confine my self, at present, to what appears, at first sight, to have been somewhat singular

^e In the *Introd. to the Register of the Garter*, p. 63.

^a Menen. Dilic, Equestr. p. 72.

in the Ritual of this Degree of the *Bath*; namely, that every young Knight should wear a white Silk Lace on his Left Shoulder, 'till it should be taken off by the Hand of the Prince, or of some noble Lady, upon his having performed some brave and considerable Action: which might give Rise to the Institution of an Order of Knighthood, from the Badge proper to it, denominated the *Knot*; and this Knot was to be worn by the Companions ^a *untied*, till they had respectively done some such signal Military Exploit.

In the former Ages of Gallantry, Knights obliged themselves, by Vows, to perform *Feats of Arms*; and as a visible Test of their Prowess and Resolution, made choice of some particular Ensign, a Bracelet about the Arm, a Chain about one of their Legs, or some other Device of like nature; first tied on with great Ceremony by the Hand of some beautiful Lady, and worn as the Signal of a Challenge to all Persons, termed, in the Language of that Time, an *Emprise*; as, upon the Performance of that Vow, the same Badge was likewise taken off by a Lady; which Action was called *Deliverer de sa Emprise*, and probably the Word *Enterprize* may owe its Etymology to this Practice.

^a Hist. des Ordres Militaires, Amsterd. 1721, Vol. 3. p. 413, 414. Car. de Iellis in famil. Neapol. Hic jacet strenuus Miles Collutius Bozzutus filius eius qui fuit de Societate Nodi, quem Nodum in campali bello victorioso dissolvit, & dictum Nodum religavit in Jerusalem, qui obiit, 1370.

The taking this Silk Lace off the Knights of the *Bath* by a Lady, is the more observable, as to defend and protect Virgins and Widows was a Duty incumbent on them, by vertue of their Oath; and therefore it might not be improper, that they should be despoiled of this Badge by so soft, and pleasing a Violence. But, that the Ladies might still do greater Honour to the Knights, who were the Objects of this Favour, Tilts and Tournaments were ordinarily appointed on the Solemnities, in which Knights of the *Bath* were created; and when they were to make a Trial of their Strength and Skill, which by the Monkish Writers, and Historians, are termed *Tyrocinia*, probatory Martial Exercises, wherein the Ladies were generally appointed Judges, and distributed honorary Rewards to the Combatants, according to the different Proofs of their Strength, Art, and Activity; the Discussion of which particular Articles would require too great a Compass in this Place, and therefore I must dismiss that Enquiry to another Opportunity; as also the Consideration of the Badge granted to the Knights of the *Bath*, by which they are distinguish'd, being *Three Crowns*, the Arms ascribed to King *Arthur*.

4. The other Method of making an Estimate concerning the Dignity of any Honour, is, from the Character of the Persons, on whom it hath been peculiarly conferr'd. Our Kings themselves, who had not been knighted before their Accession to the Sovereign Authority,

thority, have formally taken this Knighthood upon them, at the same time with the Crown; the Princes of the Blood Royal, foreign Princes, young Gentlemen of the highest Nobility, and first Distinction for their Birth, Quality, and personal Merit, have been the proper and select Objects of this Royal Grace: Instances whereof may be found in the Appendix.

5. Concerning the allegorical Construction of the Ceremonies used throughout the whole Process of conferring this Dignity, and the mystical Signification of the particular Make, and different Colours of the Materials, which are expressly enjoin'd by the Formulary, whereof I promised to give some Account: I shall now cursorily remark, that the Humour of former Ages disposed them to be very particular and prolix in the Explication of Forms. I have in ^a another place observed, how far the Rites relating to the Fashion and Colour of the Ensigns used by the Knights of the *Garter*, have been moraliz'd; and in reference to the present Subject, shall take notice, that the most learned Mr. ^b *Selden*, for the Proof of *Bathing*, cites an old Book, describing the Game of *Cheffe*, translated by *Caxton*, without assigning the Time when the Writer of that Book lived. A Transcript of which I have, in Deference to Mr. *Selden's* Authority, inserted from a ^c Translation of it into the *French* Language; for

^a *Introd. to Register of the Garter*, p. 119, 120. ^b *Titles of Honour*, p. 456.
^c Appendix, Numb. 87. from a very fair MS. in the Hands of Mr. Woodman the Bookseller.

the Book is said to have been written originally in *Latin*, and even this *French* Translation being dedicated to *John Duke of Normandy*, eldest Son of *Philip King of France*, it follows, that it must have been made in the Interval between the 17th of *February*, 1331, when the Title of that Dutchy was conferr'd on him, and the Time of his Accession to the Throne by the Demise of his Father on *Aug. 22*, 1350.

Bathing, from whence these Knights took their Appellation, represents the ^a Purgation of the Person bathed from Sin, and from all Kind of moral Impurity; as a Person, by Baptism, is sanctified by a Principle of inward and spiritual Grace.

After Bathing, he is put into a new and clean Bed, to denote that perfect and sedate Composure of Mind, with which a Course of virtuous Atchievements, in his new Military State, is to be finally rewarded.

After he hath for some time repos'd himself, Robes of Crimson, or Red Tartarin were deliver'd to him; by which significant Rite and Ornament he is instructed, that the Duty of his new Military Office requires, he should, for the Service of the Christian Religion, and for the Church, be ready to expose himself, whenever there may be just Occasion, to the greatest Diffi-

^a See Appendix, Numb. 86, 87. for the Proofs of these Allegories. Cambden's Britan. p. 124. juxta vas balneatorium linteis opertum, in quo cum se Deo commendaverint, se abluunt, ut deinceps corpore, animoq; mundo esse admoneantur, &c.

culties and Dangers ; though such as may occasion the shedding of his Blood : And these Robes are guarded, lined, or edged with white Silk, as emblematical of that immaculate Honour, which, in virtue of his Knighthood, he is inviolably obliged to preserve and maintain.

The *Chausses semellees*, or Black Stockings soled with Leather, are intended, as several other Materials of that Colour, in the Allegorical Construction of them, for a Document of Humility ; reminding him of his first Extraction, in respect to his mortal, and material Part, the Earth, out of which his Body was originally formed, and into which it must sometime certainly be resolved.

His Spurs denote his Ardour, Forwardness, and Activity in the Pursuit of Military Adventures, and Honour ; and particularly, a ready and chearful Obedience to any superior Command, such as himself should think reasonable to be obey'd without Scruple or Regret, by those, over whom he might be placed in any Degree of Authority ; especially, where Circumstances would not admit Dispute or Delay. And here I am to remark, that according to the Heraldick System, Spurs are carried, among other Trophies, at the Funeral of a Knight of the *Bath* ; a Privilege not allowed to any other Person, under the Degree of a Baron, except only to Bannerets, and in later times, to Colonels of Horse.

The

His white Girdle or Belt, represents the Vertue of Chastity, not in Opposition to Marriage, but to ^a impure and criminal Love, which Knights ought particularly to detest, as being the avow'd Guardians of Female Vertue and Honour.

The Ceremonial directs, that the Lords, who by the Sovereign's Appointment, shall put on the Spurs, do likewise make the Sign of the Cross on each Knee of the Knight; and several Monuments of Knights of the *Bath* were lately, if not still remaining, having ^b Crosses placed in this manner upon their Knees.

The Sword is design'd as a Token of the Knights declaring open Defiance to the Devil, and of his resolving to defend Religion, and the Duties of his Calling, with all Vigour and Constancy; particularly, to undertake the Protection and Defence of Poor Men against the Rich, and of weak Men against the Strong.

The Coife, white Covering, and white Hat upon the Head, imports, in the moral Design of it, that as a Knight is under indispenfible Obligations, in vertue of his Character and Function, to perform good and commendable Works; so he ought to preserve a pure Conscience before God, and should be careful never to do, never to design any thing, for which his Mind may inwardly challenge or reproach him.

^a *That of Sir R. Willoughby, Chief Justice in the Reign of Edward I. Of Sir John Norton, in 1520. in the Church of Wath in Yorkshire. Of Sir John Leigh in Lambeth, &c.*

^b *See Du Fresne Gloss. v. Cingulo militari decorare.*

The Blow on the Neck is intended, as a ^z Memorial to him, that he ought not to be insensible of any real Indignity, or Affront; that Honour is a tender Point; and no Impressions are sooner felt, or ought to be longer retained, than those whereby any Person suffers in his Character, as a Man of Honour.

This Account of the mystick Signification, in giving the Blow, is agreeable to the Opinion, which hath prevailed in later Times. But since learned Men have made different Conjectures, about the Origin of it, as I have in another ^a Place observ'd, it may be convenient to propose some of them, which have been thought most specious, to the Reader, that he may judge for himself, concerning the Propriety of them. There are Authors, who have derived this Blow from the Stroke given by the *Romans per vindictam*, with the Rod, upon any Person, in his receiving Manumission: Others have deduced it from the Stroke, that the Bishops frequently gave to Persons confirmed by them: Others contend it was given upon the Creation of a Knight,

^z Lambertus Ardenfis Hist. Com. Guisn. qui vixit sub *Philippo Augusto*. In die Sancto Pentecostes ei Militarem, non repercutiendus, dedit alapam, & militaribus eum in virum perfectum dedicavit sacramentis. *In that Age, the Historians observ'd not the strict Rules of Grammar; and it being evident from the whole Passage, that the Words, non repercutiendus, must refer to the new-created Knight; it may not be unreasonable to guess, that the true Reading ought to be non repercutiendus; more especially, since this Signification of that Stroke is remembered by other Writers. Thus in the Appendix, Numb. 86. at the Knighting of Ildebrand, this Advice is particularly given him.*

a Introduction to the Register of the Garter. Other Authors have attributed it to the antient Adoptions per arma.

with such Violence, that he should, by the sensible Impression of it, be more powerfully, and permanently reminded of his Profession; which Opinion appears consonant to an antient Custom of the *Romans*, transmitted from them to the *Germans*, of giving a Blow to a Person, who might be called upon to attest any Thing in Evidence, that had happened at the Time, when the Blow was given, or was for some special Reason to be particularly remembered; several Instances of which Practice are collected by ^b *Du Fresne*; to which may be added, it was customary in the ^c Northern Parts of *Europe*, when the Priest put the Ring upon the Bride's Finger, for those, who assisted at the Marriage, to give themselves such Strokes, the more effectually to remember the Solemnization of it. After such Instances, I need not make an Apology for observing, there is, in many places, a Custom of the like Nature observed in our annual Perambulations, in order to determine, and ascertain to our respective Parishes, their true Bounds, and proper Claims of Right, by such Treatment of young Persons, as may ever after cause them to remember the Occasion of it. Some Ceremonials of Knighthood presuppose, indeed, another Reason for this Rite of the Blow, and say, it was appointed in ^d Memory of our Saviour's being buf-

^b Gloss. v. auris, alapa.

^c Olaus Magnus, l. 14.

^d *The Knighthood of William Earl of Holland*, 247. in Selden's *Titles of Honour*, Part 2. c. 1. § 60.

feted, and smitten for our Offences. This Blow was probably given on the ^e *Back* of the Shoulder, or Neck, that the Person, who received it, should continually remember, that he ought never to give an Enemy the Opportunity, upon his flight from the Battle, of striking him in the same Place. There is another Account, concerning the Origin of this Ceremony, which I shall barely mention, without any Remark; namely, that it was derived from the ^f Sword, when the Military Oath was taken by the Soldiers, under the Roman Emperor *Julian*, *Gladio cervicibus admoto*, mentioned by *Marcellinus* ^g.

However this may be, yet, it ought not to be disguised, that not only the Monarchs of this Nation, but several foreign Princes have also, in former Ages, upon extraordinary Occasions, conferred Knighthood by *Bathing*. And since we may receive several considerable Informations concerning the Rites, and Import of these Rites, from the Methods used by them, I thought proper to insert some Precedents in the *Appendix* of such foreign Creations. In 1350, Robes were prepared for the ^b Knighthood of the *Dauphin*, in which he was to perform his Vigils, with Coverings also for his Bed, and Coats of Arms to be set up in the Chamber, with several other Materials. The Method

^e Caseneuve v. Accollec.
^f Cassellii Variar. l. 1. c. 8.

^g Lib. 21.
^b Du Fresne, Gloss. v. Miles.

of conferring this Knighthood, by the King of *France*, upon *Lewis* King of *Sicily*, in *May* 1389, by *Bathing*, and other Ceremonies, corresponding with these used in this Realm, is so noble and ⁱsolemn, that unless I had been confined so much to Time, I ought to have made a Version of it. This Practice was ^llikewise upon grand Occasions observed in *Italy*, ^kwhereof Instances will be found in the *Appendix*, and which, in Truth, should have been, but for the same Restraint, rendered in *English*: And as to *Spain*, ^lMr. *Selden* hath already told us, what the antient Customs of that Nation were, in this Respect; and he takes it for granted, that our *Edward* the First, was there knighted in this Manner: Several curious Observations might be drawn from these Narratives, which must be postponed to another Time.

The antient Ceremonial, both in the *French* and the old *English* Language, wherein the Rites of conferring this Degree are exhibited, will enable us to form the most clear and distinct Notions concerning the Reason, and End, upon which they were appointed. The *French* Ceremonial, indeed, hath been already printed by *Bishe*, in his Notes upon *Upton*; but either the Copy, from which he transcribed, was faulty; or he was not so careful, and exact, as he ought to have been

ⁱ Appendix, Numb. 85.

^k Appendix, Numb. 86.

^l *Titles of Honour*, l. 2. c. 4. § 8.

in transcribing. ^m Mr. *Selden* hath referred us to a Formulary in the same Language, which he supposeth, was not more antient, than the Reign of *Henry VII.* It is probable, he did not meet with any Copy that was extant, though there were certainly several latent Copies of it, written before that Time. There are still some Copies remaining, which, by the ⁿ Characters, seem to be of much greater Antiquity. ^o Mr. *Thinne*, a good Judge of such Matters, refers to one in his own Custody, written under the Reign of *Edward III.*; and it hath been already hinted, that ^p *Upton*, who wrote in the Reign of *Henry VI.*, might, in all probability, refer to this Ceremonial, as extant in his Age: To which may be added, that the whole Process contained in this *French* Formulary, hath all the Characters, or proper Marks of a more early Composition: It corresponds exactly with the Preparations in the Accounts of the Wardrobe; and it is observable, that in the Article concerning the Fees due to the *Barber*, it specifies only such, which are to be paid by an Earl, Baron, Banneret, or Knight. The Fees, indeed, as due from the Degree of Dukes, are therein omitted; which Omission, if it should not be allowed as a just Consequence, that this Instrument is more antient, than

^m *Titles of Honour*, l. 2. c. 5. n. 45.

ⁿ *There is one such Copy in the Cotton Library, and another in my Custody,*

P. 35.

^o *Advocate and Anti-Advocate*, MS.

^p *See above*, p. 52.

the Erection of the Ducal Dignity in this Kingdom; yet, we may reasonably conclude, it was framed before the twenty-fifth of *Henry VI*, when the Fees of the respective Degrees were confirmed to the ^g *Barber*, and the Fees for a Duke particularly expressed, and determined to be in a duplicate Proportion to those of an Earl; and in several later Copies of this *French Ceremonial*, these Fees, due from a Duke, are mentioned. *Bysse*, and *Dugdale* in his *Warwickshire*, have severally exhibited, in Sculpture, the Method of conferring this Degree; the original Drawings, from whence these Sculptures were taken, are now in the Possession of his Grace the Duke of *Montagu*: In them, several of the Esquires, as there represented, have, about their Necks, a Collar of white Roses, with a white Lyon pendent to it, which I have observed in ^r another Place, was the Collar, and Badge used by the Domesticks of *Edward* the Fourth. But if *Henry VII*, permitted his Queen-Consort to give her Servants the Badge, used by her Father *Edward IV*, then this Sculpture may be the Picture referred to in the ^f *Appendix*, which represented the Manner of creating Knights of the *Bath*, at her Coronation.

I had a Design to add explanatory Notes upon the Ceremonial, towards discovering more fully the Nature

^g Appendix, Numb. 45.

^r *Introduction to the Register of the Garter*, p. 119.

^f Append. Numb. 57.

of the Rites required, and the Meaning of several Terms therein contained; but the Printing of those Notes, was not practicable, within the Time limited for the Publication of this Essay. However, to express in some Degree, my most grateful, and dutiful Acknowledgement to the Earl Marshal, whose Fees are expressed in this Ceremonial, I cannot omit to remark, that these Fees do not depend upon the Authority of this Formulary, but are grounded upon an immemorial Usage, and as such, confirmed expressly by the Statute-Law^t of this Realm, and frequently recited in the ^u Records, and by our ^x Historians.

These are the Facts, which I have at present thought necessary to produce; and the Reader may be assured, they have been faithfully cited, and that due Care hath been used, not to misrepresent the Sense, or Design of the Authors, or Instruments, from which they were taken: But as to the Observations, which have been occasionally made upon those Facts, though it is hoped, notwithstanding the short Time, wherein this imperfect Scheme of an History hath been drawn up, I have not committed any material, and I am sure, cannot be charged with any wilful Mistake, in deducing

^t Stat. Westm. 2. c. 42.

^u See Prinn. on 4th Inst. p. 74. and at the Coronation of Queen Alianor, the red Book of the Exchequer informs us, that Gilbert Earl of Strigul, then Marshal, Recepit autem de quolibet Barone facto milite a Rege, & quolibet Comite ea die Palfridum cum sella.

^x See the Claim in Mat. Paris, under 35 Hen. 3. p. 830.

them; yet, if it should, in Time future, appear, that I have really drawn any false, or even precarious Inference on any Account, from the Authorities, on which my Arguments have been founded, I desire to reserve a Liberty to my self of correcting such Error, and of proposing the Matter in Question in a more true and convenient Light.

COLLECTION

O F

AUTHORITIES

Referred to in the

INTRODUCTION.

NUMB. I.

Malmsbury l. 2. c. vi. de Regibus.

A NNO Dom. 871. Nam & avus ejus *Alfredus* prosperum ei regnum olim imprecatus fuerat, videns & gratiose complexus speciei spectatæ puerum, & gestuum elegantiam; quem etiam præmature militem fecerat, donatum Chlamyde coccinea, gemmato baltheo, ense *Saxonico* cum vagina aurea.

NUMB. II.

Ingulf. inter *Rer. Anglic. Script. Lond. 1596, f. 512 b.*

Quoniam *Anglorum* erat consuetudo, quod qui militiæ legitimæ consecrandus esset, vespere præcedente diem suæ consecrationis ad Episcopum, Abbatem, Monachum, vel Sacerdotem aliquem contritus, & compunctus de omnibus suis peccatis confessionem faceret, & absolutus, orationibus & devotionibus & afflictionibus deditus, in Ecclesia pernoctaret, in crastino quoq; missam auditurus, gladium super altare offerret, & post Evangelium Sacerdos benedictum gladium collo militis cum benedictione imposeret, & communicatus ad eandem missam sacris

A

Christi

Christi mysteriis denuo miles legitimus permaneret. Hanc consecrandi militis consuetudinem *Normanni* abominantes non militem legitimum talem tenebant, sed socordem equitem, & Quiritem degenerem deputabant.

N U M B. III.

Joh. Monachi Majoris-Monasterii vita Gaufr. Ducis Norman.

l. I. ad A. D. 1127.

Gaufredus, Fulconis Comitis Andegavorum, post *Jerosolymorum* Regis, filius, adolescentiæ primavo flore vernans, quindecim annorum factus est. *Henricus* primus Rex *Anglorum* unicam ei filiam lege Connubii jungere affectabat. Regia voluntas *Fulconi* in petitionibus suis innotescit. Ipse Regis petitionem effectui se mancipaturum gratulanter promisit. Datur utrinque fides, & res sacramentis firmata, omnem dubietatis scrupulum tollit. Ex præcepto insuper Regis exactum est a Comite, ut filium suum, nondum militem, ad ipsam imminentem Pentecostem *Rothomagum* honorifice mitteret, ubi ibidem cum *coaquavis* arma suscepturus, *regaliis gaudiis* interesset. Nulla in his obtinendis fuit difficultas: Justa enim petitio facilem meretur assensum. Ex Imperio itaq; Patris, Regis Gener futurus, cum *quinq; Baronibus*, multo etiam stipatus milite, *Rothomagum* dirigitur. Rex adolescentem multiplici affatur alloquio, multa ei proponens, ut ex mutua confabulatione respondentis Prudentiam experiretur. Tota dies illa in gaudio & exultatione expenditur. Illucescente die altera, *Balneorum usus*, uti *tyrociniæ suscipiendi consuetudo exoptulat*, paratus est. Post corporis ablutionem ascendens de *Balneorum* lavacro, bysso retorta ad carnem induitur, cyclade auro texta supervestitur, chlamide conchilii & muricis sanguine tincta tegitur, caligis holosericis calciatur, pedes ejus sotularibus in superficie leunculos aureos habentibus muniuntur. Talibus ornamentis decoratus regius Gener, adductus est miri decoris equus. Induitur lorica incomparabili, quæ maculis duplicibus intexta, nullius lanceæ ictibus transforabilis haberetur. Calciatus est caligis ferreis ex maculis itidem duplicibus compactis. Calcaribus aureis pedes ejus adstricti sunt. Clypeus leunculos aureos imaginarios habens collo ejus suspenditur. Imposita est capiti ejus cassis multo lapide pretioso relucens, quæ talis temperaturæ erat, ut nullius ense incidi, vel falsificari valeret. Allata est hasta fraxinea ferrum *Picavense* prætendens. Ad ultimum allatus est ei ensis de thesauro regio ab antiquo ibidem signatus, in quo fabri-

fabricando fabrorum superlativus *Galannus* multa opera, & studio defudavit. Taliter ergo armatus tyro noster, novus militiæ postmodum flos futurus, mira agilitate in equum profilit. Quid plura? Dies illa *tyrocinii* honori, & gaudio dicata, tota in *ludi bellici exercitio*, & procurandis splendide corporibus elapsa est. Septem ex integro dies apud Regem *tyrocinii* celebre gaudium continuavit.

NUMB. IV.

Joh. Salisb. de nugis Curial. l. 6. c. x. Inolevit consuetudo solempnis, ut ea ipsa die, qua quisque militari cingulo decoratur, Ecclesiam solempniter adeat, gladioque super altare posito, & oblato, quasi celebri professione facta, seipsum obsequio Altaris devoveat, & gladii, id est officii sui jugem Deo spondeat famulatum.

Ibid. c. xiii. Sunt autem plurimi, qui malorum clamore operum quando Militiæ consecrandi cingulum altari obtulerunt, videntur protestari se eo tunc animo accessisse, ut altari, & ministris ejus, sed & Deo, qui ibi colitur, bellum denuntiarent.

NUMB. V.

Baldemino Adhidiac. Norverb. Honor cinguli militaris, quomodo ad Apostolorum limina properantem, tu inde rediens decorasti in urbe Senarum &c. si me mutato nomine in *Italia* militare non obstupescas, sed imputa tibi, qui me in *Italia* donasti cingulo militari &c. Epist. 219.

NUMB. VI.

Petri Blefens. Epist. 94. Olim se juramenti vinculo milites obligabant, quod starent pro Reipub. statu, quod in acie non fugerent, & quod vitæ propriæ utilitatem publicam perhaberent. Sed & hodie *Tirones* enses suos percipiunt de altari, ut profiteantur se filios Ecclesiæ, atque ad honorem sacerdotii, ac tuitionem pauperum, ad vindictam malefactorum, & patriæ liberationem se gladium accepisse; porro res in Contrarium versa est, nam ex quo hodie militari cingulo decorantur, statim insurgunt in Christos Domini, & deserviunt in patrimonium Crucifixi.

NUMB. VII.

Magn. Rot. 6 Joh. rot. 16. Et pro tribus robis de *Scarletto* & tribus de *viridi* & ii Baldekinis & i *culcitra* & aliis necessariis ad faciendum unum militem xxxiii l.

Claus. 6. Joh. m. 20 d. Johannes &c. Vicecomiti Southampton Salutem. Præcipimus tibi, quod facias habere Thomæ Sturmy valletto nostro unam robam de scarletto cum quadam penula de byffis, & aliam robam de viridi vel burnetta, & unam sellam, & unum par loianorum, & capam ad pluviam, & unam culcitram, & unum par lintheorum, quando ipse fiet miles, Et quod in hiis posueris, computabitur tibi ad Scaccarium. Teste meipso apud Bristol xviii die Julii anno regni nostri sexto.

NUMB. VIII.

Magn. Rot. xi. Joh. rot. i.

Et pro tribus robis de Serico & tribus de viridi cum bisis, & tribus coopertoriis, & tribus *culcitris*, & tribus sellis cum loris, & tribus paribus lintheorum, & tribus paribus *camisiarum*, & braccarum, & pro aliis minutis apparatibus ad faciendos milites xxi l. x s. ii d.

NUMB. IX.

Claus. 32 H. 3. m. 3. Mandatum est Willimo de Pleffetis, quod mittat unam robam de serico, duas robas de panno, capam, lectum, & alia necessaria ad unum militem faciendum &c. 3 Sept.

Claus. 33 H. 3. m. 6. Mandatum est Willimo de Pleffetis, quod Stephano de Salinis faciat habere lectum pulchrum, & tria paria robarum decentium, & alia necessaria, quæ sunt de officio vestro ad se militem faciendum &c. 26 Julii.

Claus. 34 H. 4. m. 19. Mandatum est Joh. de Somercot & Rogero Ciffori, quod Johanni de Simnevil, qui instanti festo natalis Domini cingulo militiæ decorabitur, habere faciant quandam robam de Scarletta cum penula de Bissis, vel de minuto vario, & lectum militarem, sicut alii novi milites nostri habere consueverunt &c. 26 Nov.

Claus. 39 H. 3. m. 11. There are Mandates to deliver to Matthew Hanybal, quem Rex faciet novum militem, four Hogsheds of Wine, and four Palfreys, and another to deliver him Robam de Scarletto cum minuto vario, & aliam capam, & robas sibi convenientes & pulchrum lectum cum matricio, coopertorio, & culcitr. cum pannis ad aurum &c.

NUMB. X.

Comp. Garder. 31 E. 1.

Petro de la Foix facto militi ad cointesium suum furrand. i pen. qr. Eidem

Eidem ad unam robam vii uln. bl. i furr. popl. i Capuc.
Men.

Eidem ad aliam robam vii uln. virid. i furr. popl.

Eidem ad capam v uln.

Eidem pro *lecto* suo x ulnas canabi.

Eidem ad lintheamina xx uln. telæ.

Eidem ad *culcitram* suam lineand. x uln. carde.

Eidem ad *matriciam* x uln.

Confimilia allocantur

Job. de Horne tanquam Baneretto,

Rob. de Ufford tanquam Baneretto.

Job. de Felton, Comme a Bachelor.

Richo de ----- tanquam simplici militi.

Job. de Dagworth tanquam simplici Baneretto.

Rich. de Stratten tanquam simplici Baneretto.

Johanni de Cormailles tanquam simplici Baneretto.

Will. de Botecourt tanquam simplici Baneretto.

Job. de Berkle tanquam simplici Baneretto.

Job. Giffard tanquam simplici Baneretto.

Ph. de Nevill tanquam Baneretto.

NUMB. XI.

Comp. Garder. 33. E. 1.

Pagano Tibetot ad coyntesium i pen. min.

Eidem ad i rob. xii uln. i fur. i capuc. Men. i fur—

Eidem ad aliam robam. xii. uln. ii. furr. gr. capuc. m. v.

Eidem ad *Capam* v. uln.

Confimilia.

Georgio de Thorpe,

Johanni de Nevil,

Johanni Douvedale,

Thomæ de Latimer.

Rich. Grey facto militi ad coyntesium suum i pen. m. v.

Eidem ad primam robam suam xi uln. i fur. min. i fur. gr.
i capuc. men.

Eidem ad aliam robam suam xi uln. i furr. gr. i furr. popl.
i capuc. m. v.

Eidem ad *Coopertorium* suum ad xii. uln. i coopertorium. m. v.

Eidem ad *capam suam*. v. uln.

Confimilia.

Petro Skerk,

Job. le Strange

Will. Clerk,

Hugoni de Crofte,

Job. de Watervill,

Barth. Deynevill.

N U M B. XII.

Matth. Westm. A. D. 1306. p. 458. Ad augmentandum igitur profectionem suam in *Scotiam* fecit Rex per *Angliam* publice proclamari, ut quotquot tenerentur fieri milites successione paterna, & qui haberent unde militarent, adessent apud *Westmonasterium* in festo *Pentecostes*, admissuri singuli omnem ornatum militarem præter Equitaturam, de regia Garderoba. Confluentibus itaq; CCC juvenibus, filijs Comitum, Baronum, & Militum, distribuebantur purpura, byssus, syndones, cyclades auro textæ, effluentissime, prout cuiq; competebat. Et quia palatium regale, etsi amplum, tamen ad tot occurrentium turbam angustum fuit, apud *Novum Templum Londini*, succis lignis pomiferis, prostratis muris, erexerunt papiliones & tentoria, quo tyrones deauratis vestibus se singuli decorarent. Ipsa quoq; nocte in Templo prædicti *Tyrones*, quotquot poterat capere locus ille, suas *vigilias* faciebant. sed Princeps *Walliæ* præcepto Regis Patris sui cum præcellis tyronibus fecit *vigilias* suas in Ecclesia *Westmonasteriensi*.

Ibi enim tantus clangor tubarum, & tibiae, & exaltatio vocum præ gaudio extiterat clamantium, quod conventus de Choro ad Chorum non audiretur jubilatio. Die autem crastino cinxit Rex filium suum baltheo militari in palatio suo, & dedit ei Ducatum *Aquitaniæ*. Princeps ergo factus miles, perrexit in Ecclesiam *Westmon.* ut consocios suos militari gloria pariter venustaret. Porro tanta erat pressura gentium ante magnum Altare, quod duo milites morerentur, quamplures sincopizarent, etiam cum quilibet ad minus *tres milites* ad se ducendum & tuendum haberet: Princeps autem propter turbam comprimentem non secus, sed super magnum altare divisa turba per dextrarios bellicosos socios suos cinxit. Tunc allati sunt in pompatica gloria duo *Cigni vel Olores* ante Regem phalerati retibus aureis & fistulis deauratis desiderabile spectaculum intuentibus; Quibus visis Rex votum vovit Deo Cæli, & Cygnis se proficisci in *Scotiam*, &c.

N U M B. XIII.

Computus Joh. de Drokenesford Custodis Garder. 34. E. I.
Domino *Edwardo Principi Walliæ* factò militi ad coyntesium suum furrurand. i pen. ermyn.
Eidem ad primam robam suam sibi faciendam xv uln. iii uln. furr. dim. min. ii capuc. men.

Eidem

Eidem ad secundam robam suam xv uln. iii fur. dim. ii capuc. men.

Eidem ad tertiam robam suam xv uln. iii fur. dim. ii capuc. men.

Eidem ad quartam robam suam xv uln. iii fur. dim. ii capuc. men.

Eidem ad quintam robam suam xv uln. iii uln. fur. dim. men. ii capuc. men.

Eidem ad sextam robam sibi faciendam xv. uln. iii fur. dim. ii capuc. men.

Eidem ad septimam robam xv uln. ii pec. Cindon. afforc.

Eidem ad octavam robam xv uln. ii pec. Cindon. afforc.

Eidem ad coopertorium pro *primo lecto* suo i coopertor. m. v.

Eidem ad unum coverchief de velvet furr. pro *eodem lecto* i coverch. Ermyn.

Eidem ad secundum *lectum* ad coopertorium i coopert. m. v.

Eidem ad perfuland. furr. robarum suarum vi capuc. m. v.

Eidem pro *Balneo* suo cooperiendo vi uln.

Job. de Warena facto militi ad coyntesium suum furr. i pen. m. v.

Eidem ad primam robam suam sibi faciend. xii uln. ii furr. i capuc. m. v.

Eidem ad aliam sibi faciend. xii uln. ii furr. i capuc. m. v.

Eidem ad capam sibi faciendam v ulnas.

Confimilia.

Job. de Arundell, *Thoma de Greyly, &c.*

Brevia penes Rem. Regis in scaccario 34. Edm. I.

Edward par la grace de Dieu Roi d'Engleterre, Seigneur d'Irlande, & Duc d'Aquitaine a nostre chier Clerke *John de Drogenesford* Gardein de Garderobe saluz. Vous mandouns, que a nostre cheir Vallet *Thomas de Veer*, qui seira fait nouveau Chevalier en la Compagne *Edward* nostre chier fitz a ceste prochein feste de Pentecoste, facez avoir convenant attir oue couverture, sicome affiert a son Estate, comme pur celi qu'est nostre nourry, & fitz de Conte. Done four nostre prive seal a Woluesfeye le iii jour de May l'an de nostre regne xxxiiii.

Edwardus Dei gratia Rex *Anglia*, Dominus *Hibernia*, & Dux *Aquitaniae* dilecto nobis *Radulfo de Stokes* clerico magne Garderobae nostrae salutem; Mandamus vobis, quod dilecto nobis *Thoma Bardolf* tanquam *Baneretto* decentem apparatus

paratum pro se novo milite faciendo, ad festum *Pentecostes* prox. futurum, in comitiva *Edwardi* filii nostri charissimi habere de dono nostro faciatis, & Nos vobis inde in compoto vestro debitam allocationem habere faciamus. Datum sub privato Sigillo nostro apud *Wolveseye* iii die *Maii* anno regni nostri xxxiv.

N U M B. XIV.

G. 2. penes me p. 70.

34 *Ed. 1. xi Kal. Junii Edward Prince of Wales was made Knight at Westminster on the day of Pentecost, and then were made 303 Knights, and the Erles of Hertford and Lincoln put on the Spurs of the Knights.*

N U M B. XV.

Selden's Titles of Honour p. 642.

Anno MCCCXVI Dominus *Rich. de Rodney* factus fuit miles apud *Keynsham* die translationis sancti *Thome* Martyris in presentia Domini *Almarici* Comitis de *Pembroch*, qui cinxit eum gladio, & Dominus *Mauritius* de *Berkley* super pedem dextrum posuit unum *calcar*, & Dominus *Bartholomeus* de *Badilesmere* posuit aliud super pedem sinistrum in aula, & hoc facto recessit cum honore.

N U M B. XVI.

Comp. Thomæ de Ufflete Clerici Provisoris Garder. 16 E. 2. novi Milites.

Henrico Percy ad apparatus suum pro Militia a Domino Rege suscipienda apud *Ebor. x die Sept. viz. ad tunicam & capam intus vigilandum* de panno mixto de - - - vii uln.

Eidem ad Cointesium suum i pen. gr. v. de ix tiris.

Eidem ad unam robam sibi faciendam de panno scarletto xi uln. i furr. men. de vii tiris i furr. gr. v. i capuc. men. pur.

Eidem ad aliam robam sibi faciendam de panno mixto in grano xi uln. ii uln. gr. v. i capuc. men. de iii tiris.

Johanni de la Haye ad apparatus suum pro militia sua a Domino Rege suscipienda primo die *Junii viz. ad coyntesium suum* i pen. popl. de ix tiris.

Eidem ad *capam suam intus vigilandum* de panno color. iv uln. dim.

Eidem ad unam robam sibi faciendum de panno viridi de - - - x uln. dim. ii furr. gr. v. de viii tiris.

Eidem

Eidem ad aliam robam sibi faciendam de bl. azur. x uln. dim. ii furr. popl. de viii tiris ii capuc. min. de iii tiris.

Confimil. apparatus habuerunt

Will. de Dounton,

Henri. Tilly,

Will. Waykam,

Henr. Longechamp,

Remondus Durant

} cum socio suo

tanquam Banerettus } tanquam simplex miles.

N U M B. XVII.

Comput. de anno 18. E. 2.

Confimilem apparatus habuerunt infra scripti ad militiam suam suscipiendam, viz.

Hugo de Poyntz tanquam Banerettus de novo milite a Domino Rege faciendo. x Aug.

Petrus de Boxstede de novo milite faciendo xiii Aug. per manus Henrici de Boxstede Germani sui.

Ric. Pyke de novo milite faciendo per manus Regis proprias Londini.

Thomas de Marlebergh,

Petrus de la Horse, 24 Oct.

Hugo de Nevil, 2 Apr.

Hugo de Pleffis tanquam Banerettus per manus Regis proprias ultimo Octobris.

N U M B. XVIII.

Placita coram Domino Rege de termino Sti. Hillar. 18. E. 2. rot. xxxiiii Judicium contra *Andream de Harcla*

Que vous foietz degrade,

qe vous perdetz noun de Counte pur vous, & pur vous

heirs a tous jours,

qe vous foietz deceynt del Espee,

qe vous Esporeuns d'orrees foient coupez de Talouns.

N U M B. XIX.

Comput. Thomæ de Uflete Clerici Provisoris magnæ Garderobæ

19 E. 2.

Jacobo Botiller de *Hibernia* ad apparatus suum pro se novo milite faciendo, tanquam Baneretto, London ultimo die mensis Martij anno presentis xix, viz. de panno in serico de Tartarin cum rad. aur. ad apparamenta sua vi uln. i pann. men. de ix tiris.

B

Eidem

Eidem ad i tunicam & i capam pro *vigilia sua* de panno color. murray de ——— vi uln.

Eidem ad robam de panno scarleto xi uln. i furr. men. de viii tiris, i furr. gr. v. de vii tiris: i capuc. men. pur.

Eidem ad alteram robam de panno viridi de Duaco xi uln. i furr. men. de viii tiris, i furr. . . . de vii tiris, i capuc. men. pur. de iii tiris.

Eidem ad i culcitram pro *lecto* suo de panno ad aur. in serico de Luka ii pann.

Eidem ad eandem culcitram liniandam i pec. Cindon & i pec. Card.

Eidem ad i matraciam pro *lecto* suo Cindone afforcio i pec.

Eidem ad idem de Carde i pec.

Eidem ad i par lintheaminum pro *lecto* suo de tela Paris xxx uln.

Eidem ad Canevaciam pro eodem *lecto* suo de canabo xii uln.

Consimilem apparatus habuerunt,

Will. de Monteacuto pro se novo milite faciendo, tanquam pro *Banneretto* per manus *Thoma de Langford* London 19 Apr.

Ebulo le Strange, &c. tanquam pro *Baneretto*.

Rogerus de Bourne,

Henr. de Harnball.

Rog. Only,

Adam de Moleleston,

Matth. fil. Herberti,

Walt. de Fauconberge,

Joh. de Gras,

Willus de Albemarle,

Thomas West,

Joh. de Kirketon,

Ric. ap Griffith,

Henr. le Vavasour,

Tho. de Weston,

Roger Deyncourt,

Nich. de Cantelou,

Will. Peverell.

Tho. de Goushull.

NUMB. XX.

Comp. Thoma Ufete 20 Ed. 2.

Joh. de Bon - - - Confanguineo Regis ad apparatus suum pro militia, tanquam pro *Comite* suscipienda, ad mandatum *Dom. Edw. illustris Regis Anglia primogeniti* London xx die *Januarij* anno presentis xx^o. viz. ad i tunicam & unam capam de panno Brun. mixto vi uln. dim.

Eidem ad coopertorium *lecti* sui pann. bl. azur. xii uln.

Eidem

Eidem ad culcitram *leſti* fui de Cindone afforc. iii pec. dim.

Eidem ad matrac. *leſti* fui de Cindone conſimili ii pec. dim.

Eidem ad par lintheam. de tela de ——— xxx uln.

Eidem ad i canevac. pro *leſto* ſuo iiii tapet.

Eidem ad apparamenta ſua de panno ad aur. in ſerico dyafpyn. ii pan. i pan. men. de viii tiris.

Eidem ad i rob. de panno ſcarlet xii uln. ii fur. men. de viii tiris, i capuc. pur.

Eidem ad alteram robam de panno viridi xii uln. ii fur. men. de viii tiris, i capuc. pur.

Conſimiles liberaturas pro apparatibus ſuis habuerunt,

Edm. de Mortuomari,

Rog. de Mortuomari,

Galfr. de Mortuomari.

} quilibet eorum tanquam pro Banerett.

Gerardo de la Bret ad apparatus ſuum pro militia tanquam pro Baneret. a Rege ſuſcipiend. viz.

Ad i tunicam & i capam de pann. Brun. mixto vi uln.

Eidem ad culcitram *leſti* fui de pann. ad aur. in ſerico dyafpryn. ii pann.

Eidem ad linuram ejuſdem de Cindone afforciato i pec.

Eidem ad matraciam ſuam de Cindone afforc. i pec.

Eidem ad borduram ejuſdem de Carde i pec.

Eidem ad lintheamina ſua de tela Paris xxx uln.

Eidem ad canevac. ſuam de Canabo xii uln.

Eidem ad apparamenta ſua de panno Tartar. vi uln. i pann. men. de iiii tiris.

Eidem ad i rob. de pann. ſcarlet xi uln. ii fur. men. de viii tiris, i capuc. men. pur. de iiii tiris.

Conſimiles apparatus habuerunt ſubſcripti,

Hugo. de Courtenaye,

Rad. de Wylinton,

Rad. Daubeneye,

Joh. de Wyloughby,

Edw. Stradling,

Rad. Baro. de Stafford,

Joh. de Moeles,

Will. de Percy,

Gerardus de Inſula,

Petrus Breton,

Rog. le Straunge,

Ernom. de Poters,

Joh. de Nevilla & alii qua-

tuor.

viz. Singuli eorum tanquam pro Banerett.

Will. de Wyloughby ad apparatus ſuum pro militia ſua ſuſcipienda per mandatum conſimile, viz.

Ad capam ſuam de pann. Brun. mixto iiii uln.

Eidem ad culcitram *leſti* ſui de pann. ad aur. in canabo ii pann.

Eidem ad matrariam ſuam, & ad bordur. culcitrae ſuae de Carde ii pec.

Eidem ad lintheam. ſua de tela linea Angl. xxiii. uln.

Eidem ad canevac. ſuam de canabo x uln.

Eidem ad apparamenta ſua de panno de Tart. uln. i pann. gr. v.

Eidem ad robas ſuas de panno viridi & blu azur. xxi uln. ii fur. popl. ii furr. ſtrandt. ii capuc. men. de iii tiris.

Conſimiles liberationes ad apparatus ſuos pro militia ſua ad tunc fuſcipienda habuerunt ſubſcripti, viz.

Johes de Ralee,

Rad. de Bloyou,

Oto Botetourt,

Will. Daubeney,

Rob. Brente,

Joh. de Cheruſtone,

Jo. de Sutton,

Alex. de Cobledyl,

Sayerus de Rocheford,

Will. Cheney,

Regin. de la Mare,

Rob. de Breus,

Sim. fil. Radulphi,

Hugo Abetot,

Jo. de Rous,

Will. D'eureus,

Jo. de Hotham.

N U M B. XXI.

Comput. Garder. primo Ed. 3.

Nich. de Wryght Ciffori Domini Regis ad i rob. de iv garniament. pro militia, & Coronatione ejuſdem Dom. Regis facienda 25 Januarii anno regni primo. Then follow ſeveral Particulars touching this Robe, and afterwards, under the Title pro militia Regis,

Eidem xxvi die *Januarii* ad *balneum* Regis pro militia ſua cooperianda de pann. ad aurum dyafpin. iiii pann.

Eidem eodem die ad tria lintheamenta pro eiuſdem *balneis* cooperiendis & pro pedibus Regis tergendis de tela Paris xxx uln.

Eidem eodem die ad i tunic. & i capam pro vigilia Regis de panno Perſico in grano vi uln. & dim.

Eidem eodem die ad i tunic. i capam & i mantell. pro apparamento Regis de velveto purpureo iiii pec. iii uln.

Eidem eodem die ad eandem tunicam & manicas ejuſdem furrand. i furr. grif. i capuc. grif.

Eidem eodem die ad dictum mantellum furrand. de pann. men. pur. i penul. men. pur.

Ornatus

Ornatus Camerae Regis ante Militiam.

Item in apparatu & ornamento Camerae Regis in nocte, antequam suscepisset ordinem militare *viz.* in palatio suo apud *Westm.* ultimo die *Januarii* anno eodem de tapetis rubeis cum scutis in corner. de Armis Regis v tapeta.

Eodem die Quiffins de Sanutello novo pro Capella Regis iii Quiffins.

De Quiffin Sanutell. pro eadem Camera post Militiam Regis vi.

De Banker. pro eadem Camera ornanda de diversis sectis *viz.* iiii rub. cum - - - virid. i virid. & iiii murr. & bluèt ix Banker.

Item de Banker pro eadem Camera ornanda de secta prædictorum tapetum cum scutis in corner. de Armis Regis iv Banker.

NUMB. XXII.

Comp. Will. la Zouche Clerici Provisoris Garderoba 3 E. 3.

Novi Milites.

Ad apparatus pro *Joh. de Cambridge* novo milite faciendo, tanquam Baneretto per literam de privato sigillo *London 22 Off. viz.*

Ad tunicam & capam intus vigilandum de panno blu de *Lovan.* vi uln.

Eidem ad quoyntesium suum de panno de *Tart.* vi uln. i pec. men. de viii tiris.

Eidem ad duas robas de panno - - - & virid. xxiii uln. ii fur. gr. de 7 tiris, i capuc. men. dim. pur. de xxxii ventr. & i fur. popl. i fur. *Strandt.* i capuc. men. de iv tiris.

Eidem ad culcitram lecti sui de pann. ad aur. dyaspin ii paun.

Eidem ad Carde liniand. de sindone afforc. i pec.

Eidem pro bordura ejusdem de Carda i pec.

Eidem ad Matrac. suam de synd. afforc. i pec. de Carða ad idem i pec.

Eidem ad lintheamenta sua de tela *Paris* xxx uln.

Eidem ad unam Canevac. pro eodem lecto de *Canabo* xi uln.

Confimilem apparatus habuerunt ad novam militiam suam subscripti, *viz.*

Edwardus le Blound

Rich. de Baicus

Petrus de Thorntone

Banco de Lere Lombardus.

John de Cantabrig was the King's Serjeant in 4 E. 3. and in this 3d Year a Justice Itinerant.

NUMB.

NUMB. XXIII.

Comp. Nich. de la Zouche anno quarto Ed. 3.

Liberationes novorum Militum.

Thomæ de Bradstan ad apparatus suum pro se novo milite, tanquam Banneretto, faciendo, viz.

Ad tunicam & capam infra vigilandum de panno col. vi uln.

Eidem ad Quantasium suum de panno Tartar. vi uln. i pen. Men. de viii tiris.

Eidem ad i robam de iv garner. de panno fcarl. long. x uln. ii fur. Men. de viii tiris, i capuc. de xxxii ventr.

Eidem ad alteram suam de tot garn. de panno bl. longo x uln. ii furr. gr. v. i cap. Men. de iv tiris.

Eidem ad lectum suum viz. ad i culcitram de panno ad aur. in serico Dyaspyn. ii panni

Eidem ad idem de sindone afforc ii pec.

Eidem ad matrarium suum de Carda ii pec.

Eidem ad unum par lintheaminum pro eodem lecto de tela Paris xxx uln.

Eidem ad i canevac. de canabo xii uln.

Eidem *Thomæ* ultra hæc, ut de dono Regis, per idem breve ibidem eodem die de Sagio, de worsted viridi i farg. cum iv tapetis.

Eidem ad i culcitram faciendam de Sindone afforciat. iii pec.

Eidem ad idem de Coton xii lib.

Eidem ad tria paria lintheaminum de tela Paris xxx uln.

Eidem ad i savenaciam & i ridell. faciend. de carda ii pec. dim.

Eidem de faccis coreis ad pannos ii facci.

Eidem de bahudis pro eisdem ii bahudi.

Eidem de fella ad fomerium ii cum iv lingulis.

Eidem de Coffris albis i par.

Eidem de Paner. grossis i par.

Eidem ad i robam de quatuor garniamentis de panno de Douaco xii uln. ii fur. Men. de viii tiris.

Eidem ad alteram robam de totidem garnariis de panno de Lovan. xii uln. ii furr. gr. v. i capuc. men. de iv tiris.

Eidem ad quatuor paria caligarum de panno brun. ii uln. dim.

Eidem ad iv paria rob. lin. de tela Paris xx uln.

Eidem de braccal. cor. capreol. ii braccal.

Eidem de capell. nigris ii.

Eidem

Eidem de Citrothecis vi paria.

Eidem de zonis fericis albis iii.

Eidem de burfis de corio albo iii.

Eidem de fellis pro palefridis i cum arfone albo & lingulis.

Eidem de gladiis ii.

Eidem de calcaribus deauratis iii paria.

Eidem de pelve ad trussandum i pelvis cum lavatorio.

Eidem de manutergiis de Paris. curt. ii.

Edmundo de Cornubia filio Domini Edm. de Cornubia ad apparatusum suum pro se novo milite, tanquam Bannaretto, faciendo, viz.

Ad tunicam & capam infra vigilandum de panno de Col. vi uln.

Eidem ad Quayntasium suum de panno Tartar. vi uln. i pec. Men. de viii tiris.

Eidem ad i robam suam de scarlet vi uln, Eidem ad alteram robam suam de panno viridi de Lovan. xi uln. dim. ii fur. men. i. fur. gr. v. i. fur. popl. ii cap. pur. quil. de xxxii ventr.

Eidem ad i lectum suum viz. ad i culcitram de panno ad aur. Dyaspyn ii panni.

Eidem ad idem de findone afforc. ii pan.

Eidem ad matraciam suam de Carda ii pec.

Eidem ad i par lintheaminum de tela Paris xxiv uln.

Eidem ad Canevac. suum de Canabo xii uln.

Confimiles apparatus habuerunt

Guil. de Pomeri tanquam banerettus, & tres alii.

In this same Rolle are contained the Provisions made in the Wardrobe for the Coronation of Queen Philippa, which was solemnized on xviii of February in this fourth Year.

NUMB. XXIV.

Comp. Garder. de anno 5 Ed. 3.

Waltero de Manny ad apparatusum suum pro se novo milite, tanquam Baneretto, faciendo, viz.

Ad tunicam & capam infra vigiland. de panno Col. vi uln.

Eidem ad Quayntasium suum de panno Tartar. in serico rad. ad aur. vi uln.

Eidem ad ii robas, quælibet de quatuor garnir. pro se de panno dim. in grano long. & murrell. xii uln. i fur. Men. de viii tiris, iv fur. Men. quælibet de vii tiris. ii furr. gr. v. quælibet de vii tiris, ii capuc Men. pur. cap. de xxxii ventr.

Eidem

Eidem ad lectum suum viz. ad culcitram de panno ad aur. Dyaspyn in serico ii pann.

Eidem ad idem de findone afforc. ii pec.

Eidem ad matraciam suam de carda ii pec.

Eidem ad lintheamina de tela Paris xxx uln.

This most valiant Knight was a Native of Henault, brought over hither by Queen Philippa, and made her Carver, & demoura la jeune Royne Philippe a petite compaignie de son pays, horsmis une Damoisel, qu'on appelloit par nom Wantelet de Manny, qui y demoura pour servir & tailler devant elle: lequel fit puis tant de prouesses en tant de lieux, qu'on n'en scait le nombre Froiss. vol. 1. c. 20. He was afterwards most deservedly elected into the Order of the Garter.

N U M B. XXV.

Comput. Garder. de anno sexto Ed. 3.

Roberto de Scoresburgh, Willimo de Denam, Richardo de Aldebury, Johanni de Shardelow, Thome Bacon, & Willimo de Sharesnull ad apparatus pro militia eorundem, tanquam pro Banerett a Domino Rege suscipienda anno presentis per tria brevia de privato figillo, viz.

Ad capas & tunicas infra vigiland. de panno rubro mixto de - - - - xxxii uln.

Eidem ad sex mantell. & quinq; tunicas pro eisdem de panno Tartar. radiat. ad aur. xxxvi uln. & vi furr. men. quælib. de viii tiris.

Eisdem ad sex robas, quælibet de iiii garniament. de panno in grano long. ii pan. iv uln. xxiv fur. Men. quælib. de viii tiris. xii fur. gr. v.

Eisdem ad sex alias robas, quælib. de iv garniam. de pann. virid. curt. xii capuc. Men. dim. - - - - quodlib. de xxxii ventr.

Eisdem ad sex lectos viz. ad sex culcitas de pann. ad aur. Dyaspinet ii pann.

Eisdem ad idem de findone afforc. ii pec.

Eisdem ad sex par. lintheam. de tela Paris pro quolibet pari xxiv uln. Cxlv uln.

Eisdem ad sex canevac. de Carde inde de Lumbars pro quolibet canevacio ii panni xii pec.

Scoresburg was a Justice Itinerant in 4 E. 3.

Denam one of the Barons of the Exchequer.

Aldebury, Shardelow, Bacon, and Sharesnull Justices of the Common Pleas.

NUMB. XXVI.

Comp. Garderob. 7 E. 3.

Consimilem apparatusum pro militia a Rege suscipienda habuere

Johes de Shoreditch,
Will. de Shareshull,
Nath. de Bathonia,
Simon fil. Richardi,
Rob. de Scardeburgh,
Joh. Petit,
Nich. Giffart.

} tanquam Banneretti.

William de Shareshull was made a Judge in this Year, Rob. de Scarburgh was Chief Justice of the Common Pleas in the 14th Year. John Shoreditch was a Judge in the 12th Year. And if these two latter were the Persons, thus created Knights in this 7th Year, the Note inserted in Dugd. Orig. Jurid. p. 137. which asserts that no Sergeants at Law were Knighted before xxvi of Hen. viii, may be a Mistake.

NUMB. XXVII.

Comput. Johis Coke Provisoris magna Garderoba a festo S. Mich. anno 21. usq; 31 Januar. anno 23. Edv. 3. m. 21.

Domino Mauritio Fitz Thomas de Kildare & socio suo pro apparatusibus suis ad ordinem militare suscipiend. de manibus Dom. nostri Regis ad festum Natalis Dom. apud *Guldeford* celebratum anno regni 21. viz. ad i cotam & unam capam ipsius Comitis pro vigilia sua, & pro coopertorio & testario suo fact & - - de Sindone afforc. & pro coopertorio de pann. curt azureo furr. de men. pur. & pro lintheam. de tela Paris fact. Et ad i Canabum pro eodem lecto faciend. & ad iiii tapeta lanæ, quodlibet tapet. continen. xii uln. & dim. & ad faciend. paramenta sua de Dyaspyns fortz furr. de men. pur. Et ad faciend. i rob. de pann. long scarletti de Brucell. furr. cum furr. de meniver.

Et ad unam aliam robam de pan. long. virid. de Brucell. furr. cum menever, & ad faciend. unam cotam, & i capam pro Domino *Philippo de Staunton* prædicto pro vigilia sua de pan. ruffetto & ad faciend. lectum suum de panno Dyaspynet Cardæ de *Lumbardie*, tela de *Wilton* & canabi, & ad faciend. apparamenta sua de panno serici Tartaryn furr. cum meniver, & ad i faciend. i rob. suam de panno viridi curt. furr. cum menever, pople, & *Stranlyng*.

ii uln. dim. pro vigil. pann. curt. mixt.
 x uln. pann. azur. pro coopert. lecti color. curt.
 i penul. pro lecto de cccii^{xxii} ventr. men. pur.
 i pec. dim. Sindonis afforc.
 xxx uln. telæ Paris.
 xv uln. curt. canabi.
 iiii tapeta lanæ.
 ii pan. Dyaspyns fortz.
 i penul. de cxiiii ventr. men. pur.
 xii uln. panni long. de scarletto de Brucell.
 vi furr. utr. de viii tiris fur. men.
 vi capuc. utr. de xl ventr. men. pur.
 xii uln. pan. long. virid. de Brucell.
 vi furr. men. utr. de viii tiris - - - -
 i capuc. de xl. ventr. men. pur.
 vi uln. pann. ruffeti curt.
 ii pan. Dyaspynet.
 ii pec. Carde.
 xxiiii uln. curt. telæ de Wilton.
 x uln. curt. de Canabo.
 vi uln. de Tartaryn.
 i penul. de c vent. men.
 x uln. panni virid. color. curt.
 ii capuc. utr. de - - - - ventr. men.
 ii furr. pople.
 ii furr. de *Straulyng*.

Dom. *Thomæ* de *Fencotes* pro apparatu suo ad recipiend.
 ordinem militarem de manibus Regis ad modum Baneretti
 ad festum Natalis Domini apud *Guldeford*.

x uln. panni long. scarletti in grano.
 x uln. pan. long. virid.
 ii furr. utr. de viii tiris men.
 ii fur. de pople.
 ii fur. de bis.
 ii capuc. utr. de xxxii ventr. men. dim. pur.
 i penula de cxx ventr. menev.
 vi uln. pan. curt. Ruffet.
 vi uln. de Tartaryn.
 ii pec. Carde.
 xxxiii uln. curt. telæ Paris.
 ii pann. ad aur. Dyaspin.
 i pec. Sindonis afforc.

Tho. de Fencotes was constituted Judge of the Common-Pleas
14 January 21 E. 3.

NUMB. XXVIII.

Comp. Joh. Norbury *custodis magn. Garder. anno 34 Ed. 3. m. 5.*
Johanni Mowbray & Willimo Skipwith pro apparatus suis
ad ordinem militarium de Dom. Rege ad modum Baneret-
torum recipiendum ad festum Natalis Domini prox. futur.
utroq; eorum capiendo pro robis suis x uln. pan. marbrun.
mixt. long. in grano, x uln. pan. virid. mixt. long. de
Brucell. & penul. de cxx ventr. men. pur. duas furrur,
utr. de vii tiris men. pur. duas furrur. de bis. utr. de vii
tiris, duas furr. de Popre, duo capuc. utr. de xxxii ventr.
men. dim. pur. vi uln. pan. ruffet long. pro una cota &
i capa faciend. & infra vigiland. vi uln. virid. Tartaryn
radiat. duos pan. ad aur. Sigastons, i pec. Sindon inde afforc.
ii pecias Cardæ de *Lumbardy* xxiii telæ lineæ Paris.

*These two were constituted Judges of the Common-Pleas, the
first on 11 July, the later on 25 Oct. 33 E. 3.*

NUMB. XXIX.

Comp. Alani de Stokes *Custod. Garder. 7 Ric. 2. m. 10.*
Johanni Holt & Willo Burgb. Justiciarijs de communi banco
Dom. Regis pro apparatu suo ad ordinem militare de
Dom. Rege apud Eltham in festo Natalis Domini anno
septimo ad modum Baneretti suscipiend. utriq; eorum pro
apparatu suo de dono ipsius Domini Regis x uln. panni
blu. long. & x uln. pann. virid. long. ii furr. utr. de cxx
ventr. men. gr. ii furrur. de bis. utraq; de vii tiris, ii
furrur. de pople, utraq; de vi tiris, & ii capuc. utrumq;
de xxxii ventr. men. pur. & pro ii robis inde faciend. &
furrur. utriq; eorum pro uno mantello inde faciend. &
furrur. vi uln. Tartarin virid. radiat. & i penul. de cxx
ventr. men. pur. & pro i capa infra vigiland. utriq; eorum
vi uln. ruffet long. & utriq; eorum pro lecto suo inde fa-
ciend. ii pann. ad aur. Sigasten. i pec. Sindonis viridis
afforc. xxiii uln. Telæ lineæ Braban. ii pec. Cardæ de *Lum-
bardy.*

NUMB. XXX.

Liber Cotom. in Officio Garderob. 2 R. 2.

P. 168. *Waltero Clopton* capitali Justic. de Banco Regis,
& *Rob. Charleton* capital. Justic. de Communi Banco Regis

pro apparat. fuis ad ordinem militar. de Dom. Rege apud *Wyndesore* in festo Sancti *Georgij* ad modum Banneretti suscipiend. viz. utriq; eorum ad i rob. yemal. fact. & fur. x uln. pan. blu. long. i furur. de cxx vent. men. gr. i furur. de bis. de vii tir. i furur. de popl. de vi tir. & i capuc. de xxxii vent. men. pur. & ad i rob. estival. fac. & lin. x uln. pan. viridis long. i pec. & dim. Syndon. virid. afforc. & ad i tunic. & mantell. de tartar. virid. radiat. cum aur. fac. & ad mantell. furur. cum i penul. de cxx ventr. men. pur. & ad i capam fac. ad infra vigiland. vi uln. pann. ruffet long. & utriq; eorum ad lectum suum fac. & lin. ac pro balneo suo ii pann. ad aur. segaston & i pec. Sindon. virid. afforc. xxiiii uln. tel. lin. Brabant p. iii^{or}. qrt. & vi pec. Card. de *Coloign* de dono dom. R. per literam de privato Sigillo eidem custodi direct dat. xxxi die *Martij*.

NUMB. XXXI.

Computus Garderoba in Libro Cotom. dicto 12 Rich. 2.

P. 175^b *Galfrido* de la *Vale* de *Hibernia* ordinat. per Dom. Regem ad ordinem militare ad modum Banneretti de eodem Domino Rege apud *Wyndesore* ultimo die *Febr.* viz. die *Dominica* prox. ante *Carniprivium* anno 12 suscipiendum pro apparatu suo. Inprimis, ad i rob. de pann. blu. long. fac. & fur. viz. i tunic. in parte linat. & furr. cum agn. alb. i supertunic. apert. i gown long. furr. cum bis. & purfilat. cum men. pur. i cloc. long. furr. cum men. gr. & i capuc. fur. cum men. pur. & i cap. dupl. i cap. de pann. ruffet long. ad infra vigiland. i tunic. & i mantell. de tartar. rub. rad. cum aur. dicto mantell. fur. cum men. pur. & cum i laq; de serico pro vestura sua ad prandium, & ad i par calig. de pann. nigr. long. & ad i lect. cont. i coopert. de pann. ad aur. Segaston lin. circa bordur. cum Sindone afforc. i par. linthiam. de tel. lin. Brabant. & pro balneo cooperiend. cum tel. conf. & i curtin. & i cauenac. & ad i par. rob. lin. de tel. Brabant. & pro al. apparat. suo, viz. i glad. cum zona de cor. alb. i par. sotular. i par. bot. ii par. Calcar. deaurat. & pro equo suo i Sell. coopert. de cor. nigr. cum pectoral. & freno de cor. nigr. & cum arceon. coopert. de cor. alb. per literam de privato Sigillo.

NUMB. XXXII.

Liber Cotom in Off. Garder. 13 R. 2.

P. 185^b Dominis - - - Comiti March, Tho. Comiti Stafford, & Alfons. filio Comiti de Den. in Arragon pro vestura & apparat. eorum ad ordinem milit. de Domino Rege apud Wyndesore in festo S. Georgii anno xiii [Rich. 2.] suscipiend. viz. cuil't eorum ad i rob. yemal. fac. & fur. x uln. pann. blu. long. ii furr. utrq; de cxx vent. & i capuc. de xxxii ventr. men. pur, & i rob. estival. fac. & lin. x uln. pann. virid. long. & i pec. & dim. Sindon. virid. afforc. & ad i tunic. & i mantell. fac. & ad mantell. fur. vi uln. tartar. rub. radiat. cum aur. & i penul. de cxx vent. men. pur. & ad i capam ad infra vigiland. vi uln. pann. ruffet long. & cuil't eorum ad lectum suum fac. & lin. ac pro balneo suo cooperiend. ii pann. ad aur. Sigast. & i pec. Sindon. virid. afforc. xxiiii uln. tel. lin. Brabanc. pro iiii quart. & ii pec. card. de *Lumbard.* per literam de privato Sigillo.

NUMB. XXXIII.

Froiff. vol. 4. c. 63. *in his Narrative of the first Expedition of Rich. 2. into Ireland, informs us that Henry Castide proposed to the four Kings of that Country, who submitted themselves, "Se volontiers ils recevoient l'ordre de Chevalerie, & que le Roy d'Angleterre les vouloit faire Chevaliers: ainsi comme usage & coustume de France, & en Angleterre, & en autres pais ——— & furent faits Chevaliers de la main du Roy Richard d'Angleterre en l'Eglise Cathedrale de Dunghin [Dublyn] & fut le jour nostre dame en Mars, qui fut en ce temps par un Jeudi, & adonc veilerent le Mercredi toute la nuit ces quatre Rois en ladite Eglise & au lendemain a la messe & a grande solennite ils furent faits Chevaliers; — & estoient les quatre Rois tresrichement vestus ainsi comme a eux appartenoit, & S'affirent ce jour a la table du Roy Richard d'Angleterre."* As it is in the printed Edition, but in a most beautiful MS. Et fervent ce jour a la table du Roy d'Angleterre.

NUMB. XXXIV.

Froiff. l. 4. c. 114, *describes the Coronation of Hen. 4. Le Samedi devant son couronnement, il se departit de Westmonstier, & s'en alla au Chasteau de Londres, a tout grand nombre.*
de.

de gens : Et celle nuit y veillerent tous les Escuyers, qui devoient estre faits Chevaliers le lendemain, qui furent le nombre de xlvi ; & eurent tous ces Escuyers chacun sa chambre, & chacun son baing, ou ils se baignerent celle nuit, & le lendemain le Duc de *Lancastre* les fit Chevaliers a sa Messe, & leur donna longues cottes verdes a estroites manches fourrees de menuver [*Et grans chapperons paraulx fourres de Menu vair*] en guise de Prelats ; & avoient les dits Chevaliers sur sa fenestre espaule un double cordeau de foye blanche, a blanches houppettes pendans.

The Words in the Italick Character are contained in a beautiful Manuscript of this History.

N U M B. XXXV.

Hollingsheads *Hist.* p. 511. Coronation of Hen. 4.

On the Sundaie following, being the even of St. Edward, the new King lodged in the Tower, and there made forty six Knights of the Bath, to wit : three of his Sonnes, The Earle of Arundell, the Earle of Warwike his Sonne, the [Brother of the] Earle of Stafford, Two of the Earle of Devonshire's Sonnes, the Lord of Beaumont, the Lord Willoughbye's Brother, the Earle of Stafford's Brother, the Lord Camois his Sonne, The Lord of Paule, Thomas Beauchampe, Thomas Pelham, John Luttrell, John Lisleie, William Heankeford Justice, William Brinchleie Justice, Bartholomew Rachford, Giles Daubenie, William Butler, John Ashton, Richard Sanape, John Tipston, Richard Francis, Henrie Perfie, John Arundell, William Strall, John Turpington, Ailmer Saint, Edward Hastings, John Creisteie, Gerald Satill, John Arden, Robert Chalons, Thomas Dimocke, Hungerford, Gilethorpe, Newport, and diverse others, to the Number of forty and six.

N U M B. XXXVI.

Liberatio pannorum in magna Garderoba Domini Regis erga Coronationem Domini Henrici Regis Angliæ Quarti.

Dominis Thomæ, Johanni & Humfrido filiis Domini Regis pro apparatus suis ad ordinem militarem de eodem Rege apud Turrim London iu vigilia Coronationis suæ recipiendum, videlicet, cuilibet eorum ad unam capam infra vigilandum iiii uln. pann. Ruffet long. & ad unum mantellum v uln. tartarian virid. radiat. cum aur. & furrur. de cxx ventr. men. pur. pro eisdem mantellis furrurand, & ad lectos suos & Babna, videlicet cuilibet

cuilibet eorum ii pann. ad aur. Racamatez. xxv uln. tel. lin. Brabant. iv uln. iii quart. tel. lin. Fland. & i pec. Carde de dono ipsius Regis contra idem tempus.

Domino Thomæ Comiti Arundell, & tribus aliis Comitibus, & v Baron. viz. Dom. Edmundo Comiti Stafford, Dom. Rich. filio Comitis Warr. Dom. Hugoni fratri Com. Stafford, Domino de Camond, Dom. de Mawley, Dom. de Latymer, Dom. de Deyncourt, & Dom. Seyntesmond Baron; Dom. de Beaumont & xxxiiii aliis militibus viz. cuilibet eorum pro apparatus suis de eodem Domino Rege apud prædictam Turrin in eadem vigilia sua ad ordinem militare recipiendum quinq; uln. panni scarlett, v uln. panni viridis long. ad ii rob. inde faciend. i furr. de Bis de vii tir. i furr. de popur. de vi tir. & ii capuc. de xxiv ventr. men. pur. pro eisdem rob. furrur. & cuilibet eorum Comit. & Baron. v uln. tarterin virid. radiat. cum auro, & cuilibet dictorum militum v uln. tarterin virid. & blew ad i mantell. inde fac. & i furr. de cxx ventr. men. pur. pro eisdem mantell. furrurand. & ad i capam infra vigiland. vii uln. pan. ruffet long, ac etiam pro lect. & balneis suis cuilibet eorum ii pann. ad aur. Racamatez, xxiv uln. tel. lin. Brabant. & i pece Carde de dono ipsius Regis eisdem fact. contra idem tempus.

Lib. in Off. Garder. p. 1.

Inter mandata de *Ter. Mich.* primo *Henr.* 4ti. *Henri* par la Grace de Dieu Roy de *Engleterre* & de *Fraunce* & Seigneur d'*Irlande*, As Tresorer & Chamberlains de nostre Eschequier Saluz. Nous vous mandons, que de nostre tresor vous facez paier vint marcs a *Henry Grene* Roy Heraud, & as autres diverses heraudes d'*Engleterre*, d'*Escoce*, & des autres pais a la Creation des plusieurs novolx Chivalers par nous affaire a la Toure de *Londres* dymenge devant nostre Coronation. Donne sous nostre privie Seal a *Westm.* le quart. jour d'*Octobre* l'an de nostre regne premier.

Exit. Pell. Mich. 1 H. 4. Sabbati 22 Nov.

Henrico Greene Regi Heraldorum, & aliis certis Heraldis de *Anglia*, & de *Scotia*, & de aliis partibus extraneis existentibus apud *Turrin London* die Dominico prox. ante Coronationem Domini nostri Regis *Henrici* quarti ad solempnitatem diversorum militum de novo creatorum per dictum Dominum Regem xx marcas, quas Dominus Rex eisdem Heraldis liberare mandavit de dono Regis per brev. *Sc.* xiii l. vi s. viii d.

NUMB. XXXVII.

Mf. Norfolk. in Off. Arm. n. 15.

Anno Domini 1413 ætatis vero hujus Principis xxvi, quinto nonas *Aprilis* die *viz. Veneris* ante *Dominicam* passionem Domini, omnibus ad futuram Coronationis solempnitatem requisitis secundum laudabiles ritus regni *Anglia* requisito modo sapientium regni prudentia previa præparatis, Præfatus Princeps concomitante honorabilium Procerum tam spiritualium quam temporalium nobili & præstanti comitiva de *Kyneston* super *Thamesiam* versus castrum suum vocatum *Turrim London* iter arripuit, cui venienti numerosa multitudo Principum, Comitum, Baronum, Militum, Armigerorum, & aliorum Procerum regni sui, necnon concives *London* modo competenti & nobili apparatu, & cum debiti honoris impensa, ac universus clerus processione festiva & omni solennitate qua poterant obviam veniebant, sicque *Turrim London* talibus exaltatus honoribus est ingressus. Apud ipsam *Turrim London* congregati erant circiter quinquaginta sive plures proceres, Juvenes notabiles ad dignitatem militaris Ordinis multum apti, a principibus & regi nobilibus trahentes originem, qui ad hoc conveniant, ut in tantæ solennitatis exordio in sui honoris incrementum a tanto Principe in milites crearentur. Venerando quoque Principi tantæ solennitatis festum, cui nihil requisitum deerat, unacum Principibus, & Magnatibus suis præsentia propria decoratu statu regio, prout decuit, residenti tociusque festi festivam claritatem suæ dignitatis illustranti radiis, Juvenes vestimentis, quibus taliter ordinandos vestiri decuit, decenter amicti, in signum quod consimile obsequium sub armigerorum habitu non erant de cætero præstituri, ad epularum solennia regia ferendo fercula obsequia debita exhibebant, qui in continenti post completas tanti convivii Epulas, ac cameras suas, loco *viz.* ad tanta negocia parato, & deputato ducebantur, ibique Duces, Comites, Barones, & nobiles milites consultores habebant, qui qualiter se gerent in venerabili ordine, quem suscepturi fuerant, quid eisdem ordini congruum, & quod congruum esse posset, ipsos summa prudentia & cura diligentissima informabant. Ipsi quorum juvenes tempore congruenti balnea ad hoc parata, ut moris est, intrabant, vigilias congruas sub vigili custodia observabant, & aliis quibuscunque observanciis, quæ tali negotio pertinere solebant, totis visibus insistebant; Tota deinceps nocte in talibus expedita, & tenebris Phæbi radiis exilium patientibus, aurora lucente

lucente, lectis preciosis aureis, in quibus requieverunt, quibusdam famulis regiis, ut moris est, pro eorum feodo liberatis, missa audita, & certæ devocionis suffragiis completis, equos nobiles ascendentes juvenes ordinandi; palliis sericis induti usq; ad aulæ regię januas devenerunt, ubi cum descendissent, quilibet ipsorum inter duos milites, secundum quod ejus statui sive gradui congruebat, honorifice deductus, a Principe magnifico statu residente regio numeris venerabilium & magnatum stipato cuneis in novos honores militaris Ordinis promovetur. Deinde in eisdem palliis sericis in regali presentia discumbentes, licet preciosis ferculis antepositis, per tota prandendi tempora nil gustabant. Post tanta regalis convivii solennia, novelli milites ipsa pallia exuentes, vestes de liberata regia ejusdem sectæ preciosas nimium induebant; & cum ipse Rex in ista eadem vigilia Dominicæ Passionis usq; *Westmonasterium* in summa nobilitate & competentissima ordinatione concomitante innumerabili multitudine Principum & Nobilium regni sui, prout tantam magestatem regiam decuit, equitaret, Omnes præfati juvenes tirunculi ordine composito spectabili apparatu intuentium oculis suo gestu nimias conferendo delicias, ipsum Regem per medium Civitatis *London* præcedebant equestres.

See 62 B. 5. in bibl. Harl. where (if my Memory doth not fail me) Elmham is said to be the Writer of this History.

N U M B. XXXVIII.

Liberatur. Dom. nostri Regis Henrici Quinti facta diversis Dominis, Dominabus, Militibus, Clericis, Scutiferis, Valettis, & aliis diversis personis contra Coronationem suam &c.

*Edvardo Comiti Marchiæ, Rogero fratri suo - - - - Comiti Hunt. - - - - Dom. le Despenfer - - - - fratri Comitis Hunt. Jo. Phelip - - - - Rothenbale - - - West. Scutiferis, & cuilibet eorum pro apparatus suis ad Ordinem militare apud Turrum London de Domino Rege recipiendum in vigilia Coronationis suæ, viz. v. uln. pann. virid. long. v uln. pan. blod. long. ad ii Rob. inde fact. v furrur. dim. qualibet de vi tir. pople & Cii^{xxii} ventr. Men. pur. iii tymbr. dim. xv bestes de Ermyn pro dict. rob. dictorum Com. *March*, fratris Com. *Hunt.* & Dom. le Despenfer inter se furrand. & cuilibet eorum v uln. tarterin. virid. ad unum mantell. inde fac. & x tymbr. xix ventr. Menev. pur. pro mantell. dictorum Com. Fratrum suorum ac Dom. le Dispenfer furr. ac etiam cuilibet eorundem ac Scutif. prædictorum*

rum iii uln. pan. ruffette long. ad i capam infra vigiland. & pro lectis & balneis suis, cuilibet eorum i pann. ad aurum racamatz. vi uln. worsted med. aff. xiv uln. tel. lin. Brabant. & i pec. de Carde de dono Regis erga idem tempus.

NUMB. XXXIX.

Fabian. Chron. p. 397. 5 Hen. 5. *The King held St. George's Feast, and dubbed there xv Knightes of the Bath, The Register of the Garter places it under this Year, Anno Regis Henrici quinti omni genere virtutum præstantissimi quinto, Cana oppido non exiguo jam sibi subactò, Duciq; Clarentiæ credito, celebritatem Divi Georgii pro temporis exigentia curavit inibi servandam, ubi quindecim Equites regio more concreavit, p. 65. See Leland's Collect. vol. I. p. 488.*

Stow's Ann. p. 350. 6 H. 5. *The King went to Caen, where he solemnized the Feast of St. George, at which Feaste he made xv Knights of the Bathe, five of them were Sir Lewis Robfart, Sir Roger Salveine, Sir John Stewart, Sir John Shotebroke and Sir John Montgomery, whom he sent to besiege divers Places thereabouts.*

Titus Livius p. 56. Walsingh. p. 448. *place this Creation in the 6th Year, and likewise Elmham in Bibl. Harley 62. B. 5. as also the MS. Life of Hen. 5 in the College of Arms, which begins Lucerna &c. which two latter Writers are express quosdam nobiles secundum Balneorum observantias creavit in milites.*

In another MS. in the College of Arms, inter Cod. Norf. N. 48. after the Narrative of the Surrender of Falloys, the King returned to Caen, and on 16th Febr. ordered a Proclamation Et en icelluy ann fist le Feste de Seint George en la ville de Caen, en laquelle il fist plusieurs Chevaliers de son houstell.

NUMB. XL.

Comp. Garderob. 9 Hen. 5.

Regi Scottorum ad & pro apparatu suo ad ordinem militarem de Domino nostro Rege apud Castrum de Wyndesore in vigilia Festi Sancti Georgii recipiendum viz. ad i Capam cum i capuc. de pann. ruffet curt. fact. infra vigiland. & ad i gown. cum capuc. de pann. blod. curt. fact. & furr. cum Min. pur. & i mantell. cum i tunica de Tarterin. virid. radiat. cum aur. fact. & furr. cum Menever. pur. conf. ac ad i doublet de panno blod. curt. conf. lin. cum tela lin. Braban. ac ad i lect. de worsted rub,

rub. med. aff. cont. coopertor. tetter, i par blanket de p. blanket curt. i par linth. de ii tel. lat. & iii uln. long. tel. lin. Braban. & i canvas fact. de Canab. ac ad cooperiend. dictum lect. cum pann. ad aur. de Luke, & ad cooperiend. *Balneum* suum tam infra quam extra & in fund. cum tel. lin. Braban. & de calcar. Glad. fell. & aliis rebus ordinat. & fact. pro dicto Rege.

Comiti *Stafford*, ad, & pro apparatu suo ad ordinem militarem de Domino Rege nostro apud castrum de *Wyndesore* in vigilia Festi Sancti *Georgii* recipiend. viz. ad i Capam &c.

N U M B. XLI.

In the Inventory of the Goods of Hen. 5, entred in Rot. Parl. 2 H. 6. m. 30. Item divers remenantz de Tarterin Ray ordeigne pur les Chevaliers de Bath pris xx s.

N U M B. XLII.

Henry 6. upon Whitsunday in his fourth Tear was dubbed Knight, by the Regent [John Duke of Bedford his Uncle] at Leicester, and then forthwith the King dubbed Richard Duke of York, that after was Father to King Edward the Fourth, and others to the Number of Forty. *Stow's Chron. p. 368.*

This Historian doth not say, that this was the Degree of the Knighthood of the Bath, and agrees not in the Number with the Register of the Garter p. 93, which reckons only 38.

Mr. Rymer vol. x. p. 356, hath published the Names of the Persons, to whom special Writs were ordered to be sent, commanding them to attend upon the King, and to receive the Order of Knighthood with him, some of them being then in Wardship, the Writs were directed to their Guardians, and others in their Minority, the Writs were sent to their Fathers.

De Ordine Militari una	cum Rege fuscipiendo
<i>Richardus Dux Eborum,</i>	Dominus de <i>Welles,</i>
Comitissæ <i>Westmerlandiæ,</i>	Sibimet,
<i>Job. filius & hæres Ducis Norf.</i>	Dominus de <i>Mautravers,</i>
Duci <i>Northfolciæ,</i>	<i>J. Cornewale</i>
<i>Hen. filius Com. Northumbriæ,</i>	<i>William Neville,</i>
Comiti <i>Northumbr.</i>	Comitissæ <i>Westmerlandiæ,</i>
<i>Thomas Dominus de Roos,</i>	<i>Georgius Neville,</i>
<i>Thomas de Beaumont,</i>	Eidem Comitissæ,
Dom. de <i>Beaumont</i> matri suæ,	Filius & hæres Dom. de <i>Talbot,</i>
	Domino

Domino de Talbot,	Sibimet,
Comes Devon,	Henry Gray,
Comitiffæ Clarentia,	Domino de Grey de Codenore,
Johannes Comes Oxon,	Robertus Veer,
Richardus Comes Westmerlandiæ,	Gilbertus Denham,
Dominus de Camoys,	Sibimet,
Willielmus Sheyne,	----- Drury,
Willielmus Babyngton,	Sibimet,
Jacobus filius Comititis Ormond,	----- Carbonet,
Domino de Bourgavenny,	Sibimet.
Henry Bourgbhier,	

In dorso.

Quarto die *Maii* anno quarto apud *Leycestriam* ordinatum fuit, quod dirigantur literæ personis infra scriptis de veniendo ad præsentiam Regis ad dictam villam pro ibidem una secum suscipiendo in se *Ordinem Militarem* in festo *Pentecostes* tunc proxime futuro. Præsentibus Dominis *Bedfordiæ*, *Cantuariensi*, & *Eborum* Cancellario Archiepiscopis, Duce *Exoniæ*, Episcopis *Dunelmensi*, *Eliensi*, & *Bathoniensi*, ac Custode Privati Sigilli, Dominis de *Cromwell*, & de *Scrop*, & aliis in Parlamento existentibus.

N U M B. XLIII.

W T. in Off. Arm. p. 34. Anno Domini 1429.
The Coronation of King Henry 6.

The sixth day of November, the Kinge of England was crown'd at Westminster on St. Leonard's-Day, and at the same Coronation weare made xxxii Knights of the Bathe, and the Morrow after was the Princes Sonne of Portugal made Knight in the Whitehall at Westminster.

Fabians Cron. p. 419. at whose Coronation were made xxxvi Knights of the Bath, Stow's Annals p. 371. to the same effect.

N U M B. XLIV.

Pat. 25. H. 6. p. 2. m. 5.

Rex omnibus, ad quos &c. Salutem,

Sciatis quod, per quamdam Supplicationem, nobis, per dilectum Servientem nostrum, Robertum Bolley, Servientem Ewariæ nostræ, exhibitam, accepimus, qualiter ipse Oppellas Barbitonforum, ad portam hospitii nostri, ubi-cumque fuerat, cum tot servientibus, quot pro occupatione hujusmodi Oppellæ prædictæ necessarii fuerunt, & oportuni, habuit & occupavit, cum omni-

omnibus Proficiis & Commoditatibus eidem Occupationi aliquo modo pertinentibus, sive spectantibus, prout ipse tempore carissimi Domini & Patris nostri Defuncti habuit.

De Gratia nostra Speciali Concessimus prefato Roberto, & Alexandro Douour Valetto Ewariæ nostræ Opellas Barbitonforum ad Portam, seu Portas Hospitii nostri, Tenendas, habendas, & Occupandas a quinto die Julii Anno Regni nostri vicesimo tertio, pro termino vitæ eorundem Roberti & Alexandri, & alterius eorum diutius viventis, cum tot servientibus, in Opellis prædictis servientibus & servituris, quot pro occupatione prædicta necessarii fuerint & oportuni, cum omnibus Proficiis & Commoditatibus, una cum feodis *Militum de Balneo*, quando erunt milites facti, sive creati, videlicet,

De quolibet milite viginti quatuor ulnas Panni lanei, qui erunt circa *Balneum*, una cum una Tapet Longitudinis trium virgarum de Rubro Worsted, ac etiam viginti solidos pro Ratura cujuslibet Militis sic creati.

Quadraginta Solidos de quolibet *Barone*, seu ejus *Pare* pro ejus Ratura,

Centum Solidos de quolibet *Comite*, seu ejus *Pare* pro ejus Ratura.

Et decem libras de quolibet *Duce*, seu ejus *Pare* pro ejus Ratura.

Et ulterius Concessimus, quod nullus alius Barbitonfor habeat seu occupet aliquas Opellas Barbitonforum, prope Portam, seu Portas Hospitii nostri, nisi prædicti Robertus, & Alexander, durante vita eorum, & alterius eorum diutius viventis, eo quod expressa Mentio de aliis donis, & Concessionibus eidem Roberto & Alexandro per nos ante hæc tempora factis in Præsentibus facta non existit, aut aliquo statuto, actu, vel ordinatione, in contrarium factis non obstantibus.

In cujus, &c.

Teste Rege apud Westmonasterium vicesimo quinto Die Julii.

Per ipsum Regem, & de Data prædicta Auctoritate Parliamenti.

NUMB. XLV.

In my Notes to the Register of the Garter under the xxviii Tear of H. 6. there is an Instrument printed, which among several other things, orders the Heralds to be paid, for the fest of the newe made Knights at the Tour Cs. in the 31 Tear of his Reign.

NUMB.

NUMB. XLVI.

Upton de re militari p. 8. Creantur & alio modo Milites, videlicet per *Balneum*, qui modus observatur in *Anglia*, & aliis regnis, ubi regnat pax.

Ibid. p. x. Ipsi Milites, qui creantur per *Balneum*, portant de consuetudine in humero sinistro suum stigma militare album, quod quidem stigma dictus tiro portabit, quousq; fecerit aliquod notabile factum, nisi aliqua nobilis Domina illud tollat, ut docet consuetudo *Angliæ*.

NUMB. XLVII.

Claudius in Bibl. Cotton, C. 3. p. 69.

Knights of the Bath made at the Tower of London before the Coronation of King Edward IV.

George, Duke of Clarence, {*Brethrene to the Kinge.*

Richard, Duke of Gloucester, {

John Mowbray, *Sonne and Heire to the Duke of Norfolk.*

John Stafford, *afterward Earl of Wiltshire.*

Lord Thomas Fitz-Alane, Sonne and Heire to the Erle of Arundell.

Lord *Straunge,*

Sir <i>John Markham,</i>	Sir <i>Robert Markham,</i>
Sir <i>Robert Danby,</i>	Sir <i>Robert Cliffton,</i>
Sir <i>William Gelverton,</i>	Sir <i>William Stanley,</i>
Sir <i>John Wingefeld,</i>	Sir <i>Nicholas Byron,</i>
Sir <i>Walter Blount,</i>	Sir <i>William Cantelewe.</i>

On the 10th day of July following, there was paid Gartero & cæteris Regibus armorum & heraldis pro milicia Ducis [Clarenc.] fratris dom. Regis x l. B. 3. p. 42. and the like for the Duke of Gloucester, pro militia. Ms. Ant. a Wood in Mus. Ashm. n. 117.

Fragment relating to Edw. IV. published by Mr. Hearne at the End of Sprots Chronicle p. 288. The 26 of January the King E. removed from Sheene—rode streight unto the Toure of London and restid there all night, where as on the morow He made xxxii Knigts of the Bathe, the whiche day at afternoone departing frome the Toure, in like goode ordre as they came thiddir, theis xxxii nw Knigtes preceding immediately before the King in their Gownis and Hoodis, and tookins of whigte Silke upon their Shouldeirs, as is accustomed at the Bath, and so in this goodely ordre He was brought to Westmynstir, where as

on the morow being St. Petirs-day and Sunday he was solempnely crownid, &c.

Menen. Deliciæ Equestr. p. 8. *saieth that Ed. IV. was knighted by the Earl of Devon.*

NUMB. XLVIII.

Fragment relating to Ed. IV. published by Mr. Hearne at the End of Sprots Chron. p. 294, 295, 26 May 1464. Queen Elizabeth was crownid at Westminster with grete solempnite, where as were made Knights of the Bath (as I knowe) the Lorde Duras, Sr. Bartelot de Ribaire of Bayen, Gascons, Sir John Wydevile Brothir to the Queene, &c.

Fabian. Chron. p. 495, 1464, (5 E. 4.) 26 May that yere Whitsonday, Quene Elizabeth was crownid at Westminster with great Solempnite: at the which season at the Towre, the night before the Coronation, among many Knightes of the Bath, there made was as of thot companie, Sir Tho. Cooke, Sir Matthew Philip, Sir Raaffe Joffeline, and Sir Henry Wavir Citizens of London, then and there made Knightes.

NUMB. XLIX.

Stat. 8. E. 4. c. 2. *An Act for Lyverey. Provided that this Ordinance do not extend to any Lyverey gyven or to be gyven at the Kings or Queens Coronation — or at the Creation of Knyghtes of the Bath, &c.*

NUMB. L.

In the Treatise stiled Domus Regis Angliæ made under the Reign of this King, under the Title of Kings of Arms, Herald, and Pursuivants, is this Clause. The Fees that they shall take at the making of Knights of the Bath, it appeared next after in the Chapter of Squires. In the Chapter touching the Waits, also this Toman waited at the making of Knights of the Bath waiting by night time upon them in the Chapel, &c.

NUMB. LI.

E. 10. penes me p. ii^xii. xiii. b. C B. 2. p. 277. b. A. D. 1475, 15 E. 4. 18 Apr.

Edwarde by the Grace of God of Inglonde, and of Fraunce Kinge, lorde of Irelande enhaunsed to the Order of Knighthode, after the Custume of Englande, in tyme of Peace, his decest Son my Lord Prince of Wales Duke of Cornwall, and Erle of Chester,

Chester, and his right dere Son the Duke of *Torke*, to whome were compeny and enhaunced with them to the same Knight-hood Therle of *Lincoln* son and heyre of the Duke of *Suffolke*, the lorde *Thomas* [*Gray*] the Quenes son, and his Brother the Lorde *Richarde*, Therle of *Shrovesbury*, Therle of *Wiltshere*, mayfter *Edwarde Widevill*, the lorde *Nevell*, the Lorde *Barkeley's* son and heyre, the Lorde *Awdeley's* son and heyre, the Lorde *Seyntamant*, the lorde *Stanley's* son and heyre [*George*] the lorde *Storton's* son and heyre, the Lorde *Hasting's* son and heyre [*Edward*] the lorde *Ferreis* of *Charteley* son and heyre, Mayfter *Herbert* Broder of the Erle of *Pembroke*, Mayfter [*Thomas*] *Vaughan*, *Bryan* chefe Judge, *Lytilton* oone of the Juges of the Comon Place, Mayfter [*Henry*] *Bodryngam*, Mayfter *Bryan Stapilton*, [*William*] *Knyvett*, *Pilkynnton* [*Richard*] *Ludlow* [*Richard*], *Charleton*. Memorand. that the same day the Kinge create the forefayde Lord *Thomas* [*Gray*] Marquis *Dorfett* before dynner; and so in the habitt of Marquis above the habitts of new Knights, and he began the Table of Knights in Sainte *Edward's* Chambre, and gave to the Officers of Armes for theyre Fee xx marks. Memorand. That at the tyme ordeined, that the King's Chamberlein shulde goo with the aunciente and well nortred Knights to advertyse, and teche the Ordre of Knighthod to the Esquiers beinge in the Bayne. The Kinge came in his owen Person, and dyd honour to all the Compeny with his owen noble counsell and hands.

Stow in his *Annals*, p. 428. gives the like Narrative.

N U M B. LII.

E. x. penes me, p. lvii. compared with G. 2. p. 341. B. 2. p. 278. and w. y. in Off. *Armorum*.

The Marriage of Richard Duke of York, second Son to Edw. 4.

In the yere of our Lorde 1477, the Kinge our Sovereigne Lorde one the xv daye of *Januarye* solempnified the matrimonial Feste of his dere Sonne the Duke of *Torke*, and the noble Lady *Anne* Daughter and sole heyre of *Johne* Duke of *Northfolke*, to the honoring of the whiche the King directed his Lettres to divers Nobles of this Realme to coome and appere at his Palace of *Westm.* one the forfayed daye to take the Order of Knighthode, and many of them were pardoned, and parte of them enhafed to the Order of Knight-hoode,

hoode, as, and in lyke Order, as they ensuen, in Seint Edward's Chamber, one the xvii day of the foresaid Month, and were dubbed one the xviii daye.

The *Bowser*, son and heir. [*Henry* son and heir of the Lord *Bourgchier*,]

[The Lorde *Latymer*,]

The Lord *Barnes*,

The Lord *Powis*,

The Lord *Morlye*,

[The Lorde *Lawarre*,]

The Lord *Mountjoy*,

The Lord *Beauchamp*, son and heir [*John*]

Sir *Thomas Howard*, [son and heir of the Lord *Howard*,]

Sir *Thomas Bourser*,

Sir *Thomas St. Leger*,

Sir *John Elrington*, Treasurer, &c.

Sir *Giles Dawbeney*,

Sir *William Stoner*,

Sir *Guy Fearfax*,

Sir *William Gascoinge*,

Sir *Robert Broughton*,

Sir *Thomas Froweck*,

Sir *Henry Tailboys*,

Sir *William Redman*,

Sir *Henry Wentworth*,

Sir *Richard Delabere*,

Sir *Richard Lakyn*.

In several Copies of these Knights, there is a Note added,

Be it remembred, That these four, Sir *Richard Lakin*, Sir *William Redman*, Sir *Thomas Frowyke* and Sir *Hen. Wentworth*, not counselled to shew most worshipec, denyed part of the Duties belonging unto the Officers of Armes, which being referred to the Lord Chamberlain, to whome the said Officers had their resort, who well and perfectly understoode of all the auncient noble Customes of Chevalrie, He went and shewed it to the Kings Grace, and to the High and Mighty Prince the Duke of *Gloucester*, high Constable of *Englond*, who then was Judge of the Office of Arms, who went in his own Person, and commanded *William Griffith*, oone of the Marshalles of the King's halle, to charge every man of the forsayde Compeny to paye their Duties unto the Officers of Armes, that ys to understonde, of every Batcheler Knight xx s. of every Baron the double, and so dowble after theire degree, whiche commandemente was kept and payde for, &c.

Mr. Thinne, in his Advocate and Anti-advocate, MS. G. 2. penes me, p. 237. saith, that these were then created Knights of the Bath.

It may be here observed, that beside these Sums in Money, the Officers of Arms then constantly received several of the Robes

as their Perquisites, which are specified in the antient Formularies, and the Memorials of the Receipts of them from the 19 Hen. 8. remain still in the College, entred in the Books of the Partitions of their Fees.

NUMB. LIII.

Stow's Ann. P. 418. Judgement given against Sir *Ralph Grey*, That his Spurs should be striken off hard by the heels, by the Hand of the Master-Cook, who is here ready to do, as was promised thee, at the time that he took off thy Spurs, and said to thee as is accustomed, That and thou be not true to thy Sovereign Lord, he shall smite off thy Spurs with his Knife hard by the Heels, and so shewed him the Master-Cook ready to do his Office, with his Apron and his Knife.

There is a Memorandum entred in the Year-Book, Pasch. 4. Ed. 4. Et le dit Sir *Ralph Grey* fuit cary a *Loncastre*, & la fut deprive del honor del Chevalier devant mults del People le Roy: 1. Ses gilt Spores hewes de fes pees & son espee, & tout son armour sur luy debruse, & pris de luy en le champe, &c.

NUMB. LIV.

Rymer. Vol. 12. P. 185. 1 Ed. 5.

To Otes Gilbert Squier.

Bibl. Harl. B. 18. f. 227.

Trusty and welbeloved, We grete you wele.

And by th'advise of our Derrest uncle the Duc of *Gloucester*, Protectour of this oure Royallme, during our Young Age, and of the Lords of our Counsell, we write unto you at this time, Willing and Nathelesse, Charging you to prepare, and furnish yourself to receive the noble ordure of Knighthood, at our Coronation, which, by God's Grace, we intende shall be solempnised the xxii Day of this present moneth, at oure Palays of *Westminster*, commaunding you to be here at oure *Toure* of *London* four Days afore the said Coronation, to have Comynycation with oure Commissioners concerning that matter, not failing herof in any wise, as ye intend to please us, and as ye will answer.

Yeven, &c. the v Day of *Juyn*.

Semblable

Semblable Letters to

<i>John Speke,</i>	<i>John Brown of Stamford,</i>
<i>Beaumont,</i>	<i>The Lord Grey of Ruthen,</i>
<i>Edward Courteney,</i>	<i>John Gifford,</i>
<i>William Garraunt,</i>	<i>William Chenay of Shepay,</i>
<i>Thomas Arundell,</i>	<i>Robert White of Southwarne-</i>
<i>William Bolney,</i>	<i>Borrowe,</i>
<i>Alexander Cressemere,</i>	<i>Gervase Clyfton of Oddisake,</i>
<i>John Clopton,</i>	<i>Nicholas Lile,</i>
<i>Henry Hayden,</i>	<i>William Barkely of Beverston,</i>
<i>John Wynkefeld,</i>	<i>Henry Vernon,</i>
<i>Christopher Willoughby,</i>	<i>Nicholas Montgomery,</i>
<i>Philip Calthorp,</i>	<i>Grene,</i>
<i>Bedyngfeld,</i>	<i>William Ovedale,</i>
<i>Thomas Lewkenore,</i>	<i>William Say,</i>
<i>William Barkeley,</i>	<i>Son and Heir of Lord</i>
<i>John Stanley,</i>	<i>Cobham,</i>
<i>Gravile,</i>	<i>Th. Hamden of Hamden,</i>
<i>William Birmygam,</i>	<i>Thomas Darcy,</i>
<i>Thomas Butteler of Beawsey,</i>	<i>Rauf Sanford,</i>
<i>John Beron,</i>	<i>Babyngeston,</i>
<i>William Trowthek,</i>	<i>Henry Colet, Alderman of Lon-</i>
<i>Milbourn,</i>	<i>don,</i>
<i>The Lord Dormond,</i>	<i>Kyngifston,</i>
<i>The Lord Sutton,</i>	<i>John Pawlet,</i>
<i>Cornewaill Lord of Burford,</i>	<i>Thomas Wyndesore,</i>
<i>Nevill, Son and Heir of</i>	<i>John Roger of Frefolke.</i>
<i>the Lord Bergevenny,</i>	

In the same Collection is a Writ from the Close Rolls. 1 E. 5. m. 1. bearing date 20 May, directed to the Sheriffs to summon such as have 40 l. and have not been knighted, to appear on the 8th Day of June, to receive that Order.

N U M B. LV.

W. Y. in Offic. Arm. p. 42^b
Knights of the Bath, made at the Coronation of Richard 3.
and Queen Anne.

Sir Edmond the Duke of Suffolks Son,
Sir John Grey Earl of Kents Son,
Sir William Lord Sowche his Brother,

Sir *Henry Burgavenny* [*Geo. Nevil* Son and Heir to the
 Lord of *Burgavenny*,]
 Sir *Christopher Wylloughby*,
 Sir *William Barkley* of *Beverston*,
 Sir *Henry Banington* [*Babynton*, in *Hollingsh.* in another
 Mr. *Baynton*. *Banington* in *Grafton's Chron.*]
 Sir *Thomas Arundell*,
 Sir *Thomas Bolayne*,
 Sir *Edmond Bedingfeilde*,
 Sir *Brewas* of *Clifton* [*Gervase*]
 Sir *William Say*,
 Sir *William Enderby*,
 Sir *Thomas Lewkenor*,
 Sir *Thomas Ormond* [of *Urmond* in *Hollingsh.*]
 Sir *John Browne*,
 Sir *William Barkley* of *Wyldy*. See *Hollingsh.* p. 733.
 Sir *Edmond Cornwall* Baron of *Burford*.

This is printed in *Grafton*, p. 799. and I have old Copies
 in *E.* 10. p. 13. *E.* 11. p. 192.

N U M B. LVI.

G. 5. penes me p. 75.

The Coronation of *Hen. VII.*

A. D. 1485. Upon *Symon* and *Judes* *Evyn*, the King proceeded to the *Tower*— and on the day following, It is to be remembre, that same day before dener entered the yonge Duke of *Buckingham* to receive th'ordre of *Knyghthode* of the *Bathe*, the whiche held the Kings *Towell*, and the Lord *Fitzwater* entred for license, he berith the King water, and in the like fourme entred [*Thomas*] *Cokesay*, *Roger Lewkenor*, *Henry Heydon*, *Reginald Braye*, and *John Verney*, whiche every eche of theym bere a Dishe to the Kings Table, the first cours onely, after that the *Esquiers* Governours wer assigned them, and their Baynes were prepared in a grete *Chambre* in the *Dongon*, as of olde tyme accustomed. And when it was nyght, the King hymself of his benigne grace, nobly accompanied with the Duc of *Bedford*, Therle of *Oxenford*, Therle of *Darbye*, Therle of *Devonshir*, with many other noble Lordez, *Knyghtes*, and *Esquiers* first yave them in the Beyn the *Advertisement* of the *Ordre* of *Knyghthode*, and afor hym other *Estats* and *Lordez* &c. On the *Saturdaye*, when the *Esquiers*

quiers whiche hadd bene in the Baynez where, and after alle other observances as of olde tyme accuftumed, wer comen ipto the Hall, the Kinge in a riche gowne entred the Halle, and stode under the Clothe of Eftate, to whome the Duke of *Buck.* was prefented by two Aftates, and the Henfman that bere the Swerd and the Sporez prefented them to the Erle of *Oxenford*, And he toke the Right Spore, and prefented it to the King, and the King toke it to the Duc of *Bedford*, commanding hym to put it upon the Duc of *Buckingham's* right Hele; and in likewyfe therle of *Darby* the left Spore, and the King girde the Swerde aboute hym and after dubbed hym Knyght. And in likewyfe and forne was the Lord *Fitzwater* prefented by two Baronez, and other Knyghts by Knyghtes, having a King of Armez before them, and when the Knyghtes were elle dubbed, The King create a Purfivaunte, and named hym *Rougedragon*, and then the King departed to his Chambre, the newe Knyghtes wente to the Chapell and offered as accuftumed, And then they alle turned into the Halle ageyn, and fatte alle at one Table and at one fyde.

Menen. Del. Equeft. p. 8, faith that Hen. 7. himself was knighted by the Earl of Arundell.

In a Roll of Knights created by Hen. VII, now in my Custody, which is on Parchment, and contains their Arms in proper Metals and Colours, and hath all the Marks of being the Original kept by the then Garter King of Arms, these Knights are not specified to be Knights of the Bath, but are therein entred only under the Denomination of Knyghts made at the Coronacion off the Kyng.

N U M B. LVII.

Ful. in Bibl. Cotton B. 12, p. 33. Coronation of Eliz. Queen of H. 7, anno tertio.

On *Fryday* next before *Seint Katheryn's* day, the *Queny* good Grace—— came forwarde to the Coronacion—— entred into the *Tower*—— and ther the Gentilmen, called by the King's mooff honourable lettres to receyve the Order of Knyghthod, were created Knyghts of the *Bath*, in manner and fourme as the picture thereof made, shewethe, whos names with the Esquiers.

Esquiers Governors by the Kings appoyment to attende upon the tyme of their saide Creation be hereafter written.

The [Lord <i>William</i>] Sone and heir of therle of <i>Devonshir</i>	{ <i>John Crokber</i> His Brother
The Lord [Edward] <i>Dudley</i>	{ <i>Thomas Blount</i> <i>Edward Bensted</i>
<i>William</i> [John] <i>Gascoyne</i>	{ <i>Thomas Totoft</i> <i>Famys Flemmyng</i>
<i>Thomas Butteler</i>	{ <i>Thomas Laurence</i> <i>John Langforth</i>
<i>Edwarde Barkley</i>	{ <i>William Woodall</i> <i>Thomas Troys</i>
<i>Wylliam Lucy</i>	{ <i>William Treurye</i> <i>John Bell</i>
<i>Thomas Hungreforde</i>	{ <i>Robert Knowles</i> ———— <i>Karleton</i>
<i>Guydo Wolston</i>	{ ——— <i>Andeby</i> <i>Alexander Oxton</i>
<i>Ri hard</i> [Thomas] <i>Pemery</i>	{ <i>John Fortescu</i> <i>William Watesley</i>
<i>John</i> [Rauff.] <i>Sheldon</i>	{ <i>John Wharff</i> <i>Pyers Brent</i>
<i>Hugh Loterell</i>	{ <i>The Serjant Porter</i> <i>Thomas Penyngton</i>
<i>Thomas Pultney</i>	{ <i>William Trussell</i> <i>Henry Lislej</i>
<i>Hugh Conwey</i>	{ ——— ——— ——— <i>Otewel Butteler</i>
<i>Nicholas Lislej</i>	{ <i>William Burges</i> <i>Robert Gethyn</i>

In the abovementioned Roll the Entry is only Knights made at the Coronacion off the Quene.

N U M B. LVIII.

Jul. in Bibl. Cotton B. 12, p. 59 b. 5 H. 7. 1489.

Item on the 21 day of *Novembre* was my Lorde Prince receyvid in manner, as ensueth, by Watter, when he came to his Creation—on the 29 of *Novemb*, when the King went to
dinar

dinar my Lord Prince hild the towelle, the Lord *Stourton* bar the watter, therle of *Northumberland* toke Say, the Lorde *Mautravers*, and the Lorde *Grey Ruthyn* hilde the bassyn, and the remenant waited on the Sewer, and bare dishes, that is to say, *Thomas West* sone and heire to the Lord *Lawar*, *John Saint John*, *Henry Vernon*, *John Hastings*, *William Griffith*, *William Tyndalle*, *Nicholas Montgomery*, *William Uvedall*, *Matthew Browne*, *Thomas Darcy*, *Thomas Cheyney*, *Edmond Gorges*, *Waultier Denes*, *William Scotte*, and *John Gyse*, and then their Esquiers Gouvernours, that war apointed by my Lorde the King's Chamberlain, that is to say, to awaite upon the Prince *Thomas Brandon*, and *Thomas of Brereton*.

On therle of <i>Northumberland</i>	{	<i>James Hide</i> <i>John Parker</i> , whiche <i>John</i> employed the money otherwise, that he had receiued of the Sectours for that cause, and not to his wourship,
On the Lord <i>Mautravers</i>	{	<i>John Baret</i> <i>Henry Uvedall</i>
On the Lord <i>Grey Ruthyn</i>	{	<i>John Griffith</i> <i>John Stanshaw</i>
On the Lord <i>Stourton</i>	{	<i>David Beaupre</i> , male for by him the th'office of Armes lost moche of hir dewtie <i>Edward Benstede</i>
On Sir <i>Thomas West</i> ,	{	<i>Richart Fisher</i> <i>Thomas Morteimer</i>
On Sir <i>John St. John</i>	{	<i>Nicholas Audeby</i> <i>Thomas Digby</i>
On Sir <i>Henry Vernon</i>	{	<i>John Fortescu</i> <i>Christopher Longdale</i>
On Sir <i>John Hastings</i>	{	<i>Richart Wrottesley</i> <i>Thomas Thorp</i>
On Sir <i>William Griffith</i>	{	<i>John Leighton</i> <i>Stephen Dyngley</i>
On Sir <i>William Tyndall</i>	{	<i>John Carleton</i> <i>Thomas Ferris</i>

On Sir <i>Nicholas Montgomery</i>	{ <i>James Cayle</i> <i>William Mendam</i>
On Sir <i>William Uvedall</i>	{ <i>John Knolles</i> <i>John Almer</i>
On Sir <i>Matthew Browne</i>	{ <i>John Lakyn</i> <i>John Nell</i>
On Sir <i>Thomas Darcy</i>	{ <i>William Paris</i> <i>Thomas Gärdenner</i>
On Sir <i>Thomas Cheyney</i>	{ <i>James Metcalf</i> <i>John Warffe</i>
On Sir <i>Edmund Gorges</i>	{ <i>Robert Gythyn</i> <i>Alexander Oxton</i>
On Sir <i>Waulter Denis</i>	{ <i>James Conyers</i> <i>Hugh Denis</i>
On Sir <i>William Scotte</i>	{ <i>John Sigesmont</i> <i>Thomas Winter</i>
On Sir <i>John Guyse</i>	{ <i>Henry Hamps</i> <i>John Wistow</i>

And when it was night, and the Princes Bayn was prepared in the Kings Clofet, and in the Entre between the Parliament Chambre, and the Chapelle, were the Baynes offtherle off *Northumberland*, and the Lord *Mautravers*, and the Lord *Gray Ruthyn*, and all the remenant ware in the Parliament Chambre, in ordre as abouewritten. And the King in his person gaue them the advertisment of thordre Knyghode, and that same feason were al thos of the Kings chappell redyng the Sauter for the good spede of the Quen, wiche then traviled, and anon upon ix of the cloke that same nyght she was delivered of a Princeffe, wiche was cristened on Seint *Andrens* day, yn *Westmynst* cherche: And on the morn, when the Prince had herd his mafs, he was, with al his forsaid compeny, prively conveid throught Seynt *Stephens* Chappell to the netherend of the Steirs toward the Vicars logyng, wher he tooke his hors, and the remenant in the pales at the Sterchambre steir foot, toke ther hors, and therll of *Essex* bore the Princes Sword, and Spores, and soo they roode aboute the Standard in the Pales into *Westmynster* Hall, the Prince forneft, and the oder folowyng in order after ther Baynes, and before the Kings Benche thei alighted of their horses, and so proceded into the *Whittball*,

ball, and stode along bi the side table, in tyme the Kyng came, and when the King was comyn, the Marquis of *Barkeley*, and therll of *Arundell* led the Prince to the presence, And therll of *Oxonford* great Chamberleyn of *Englond* toke of therll of *Essex* the Sword and the Spores, and then presented the right spore to the King, the Kyng comaunded the Marques of *Barkeley* to sett hit on the Princes ryght Hele, and lykewyfe did therll of *Arundell* on the lyfft hele the toder spore, And then the Kyng gard on his Sworde, and dubbed hym Knyght, and after al his compenye in Ordre, commaundyng oder Lordis, and Knyghtis to present them, and to sett on ther spores; and when the Kyng had dubbed al those Knyghtys, he create a Pursuivant for the Prynce, and named hym *Walyngford*, And when the Prince had offered his Sword, and forgon his Spores, he went efft to the Kyngis closett, and put upon hym his Robes of Astate &c. — All the oder new mad Knyghtys sat along the on side the Chambre &c. — After the largeffe of the Prince, the largeffe of the oder new made Knyghtys was also cryed, and after dyner, Sir *William Uvedall* was chofyn, and gave the Kyng thangkyngs in the name of all his Compenny &c.

In the Roll above quoted these are not entituled Knights of the Bath, but only entred under the Style of Knyghts made at the Creacion off Prynce Arthur.

N U M B. LIX.

Ful. in Bibl. Cotton B. 12. p. 91. Creation of the Duke of York.

A. D. 1494, 10 H. 7. The King being determyned at *Al-halowyn* tide then folowing to holde and to kepe roially and solemply that fest &c. and at that feste to doube his iide son Knyght of the *Bath* and after to creat hym Duc of *Torc*, and there apon directed his lettres milive, and allsoe writts accordyng to the same, to divers nobles of this his Roiaulme to be of his sonnys Bayne, and to receve thordre of Knyght-hod, of wiche at his commandement came xxii, as schauull folow after in this Booke, and remanent were pardoned, or wer at their fynt &c. On the morne after *Simon* and *Jude* the Prince was conveyed to *Westm.* And on *Thursday* the xxx day of *Octobre*, the said Lord *Henry* served the Kyng of towell, and the Lord *Haryngton* toke to sey, and the Lord

Clyfford hild the basen, and the Lord *Fitzwaren* bere the water, the Lord *Dacre* of the *Sowthe* bere the Kyngs potage, Mr. *Thomas Stanley*, and the remanent bere dishes at the furst course, or the iide, and the Lordes Serviturs, and the oder nobles, sum dyned in the Chambre, and the remanent satt in the Hall, sum at my Lord Stewards table, and sum at mast Controller Table, and after in like wise soo did they sope, and when it was nyght, and that their Baynes were redy furst in the Kyngs clofett was the Lord *Henry's Bayne* roially dressed and a riche bed well emparelled, and therll of *Oxinford* red the advertisement, and then the Kyng toke of the water and putt on his Schulder, and made a Crosse and tryft hit, and from thens went into the Quenes clofset, and likewyse advertised the Lord *Haryngton*, and the Lord *Clyfford*, and from thens went into the Parlement Chambre where wer xx Baynes and beddis, wiche hadden sparvors, and the best ordred that I have seen, and as folowyth, furst in that chambre was the Lord *Fitzwaren*, the Lord *Dacre* of the *Sowthe*, Sir *Thomas Stanley* son and heir of the Lord *Strange*.

Sir *John Arundell*,
 Sir *Walter Gryffthe*,
 Sir *Gervoy* of *Cliffon*,
 Sir *Edmond Traford*,
 Sir *Robert Harrecourt*,
 Sir *Henry Marney*,
 Sir *Roger Neubourgh*,
 Sir *Rauff Rider*,
 Sir *Thomas Bawde*,

Sir *John Speke*,
 Sir *Humfry Fullford*,
 Sir *Robert Litten*,
 Sir *Piers Eggecombe*,
 Sir *Robert Clere*,
 Sir *Thomas Fairfax*,
 Sir *Richard Knyghtley*,
 Sir *John Chooke*.

And after that the Kyng, of his Grace, and benevolens had viseted them all in their Baynes, he departed into his Chambre, and thenne when they wer dry in their bedds they wer revested in theyre heremits wede, and soo departed to the Chapell, where they had Spices and their voidie, and the Sergent of Confexcionary had of every Knyght a noble, and on the Morne erley every man was shreven, and herde theyr messe, doying all Obfervance therto belongyng, retourned to thair beddys and delivered their Ruffet gowne to the mynstrells, and it was so well ordred and the howse soo well voided, and thenn kept, that they toke good rest, and anon after

after as it was day, and that they were awaked, they well and liberally paid the money to th'officers of Armes, that is to sey, the Lord *Haryngton* son and heyre of the Lord Marquis *Dorset* l s. and every Baron above named xl s. and everyche of the remanent xx s. *Item* they paid to the Sergent of thewry every man xx s iv d. *Item* they rewarded the Ufers, and the grome porter, and there Esquiers of honnour liberally, and yet they made a commune purse. When the tyme was come that it was the Kyngs pleasir that they schuld arise, therll of *Oxinford*, therll of *Notumberland*, the Erll of *Essex*, the Lord *Daubney* with oder, whent to the said Lord *Henry*, and from hym to the Lord *Haryngton* and therll of *Oxinford* great Chamberlayn of *Englond* gave him hys Shertt, and after hym the oder nobles did allfoo gyven part of theyt Abblements, and allfoo my Lord of *Oxinford* with the forsaid Lords honored them with his honde, gevyng them all their shertts in ordre as above, and after as there beddis stode in ordre. And immediatly after that they wer redy, they toke thair waye secretly by our Ladie of Pieu throught Saint *Stephin's* Chappell on to the steyr foote of the Ster Chambre end, where they toke their horsles, wiche in died wer simple and soo lytill of valeur, and nott to the worshipp of Knyghthod, and that the olde Ordonance was, that thoos hors empairrelled after the Custume schuld be Fee to the Marishall of *Englond*, or 100 s. and in his abcense to the Marishalls of the Kyngs hall, consydering that thoos hors for the most part wer so simple, and for an example, that oder herafter schuld come with better hors, and more honorably, for this oons my Lord Marishall by thavys of his chiff Councell toke of every man xl s. for this tyme oonly and pardoned the value of iii l. and delivered there hors ageyn: and the Lord *William Courteney* bere the said Lord *Henry* Swerde and spores, the pomel upward, and when he did alight of his hors, Sir *William Sanddis* bere hym to the Kyngs presens, and there therll of *Oxinford* toke the sward and spores, and presented the right spore to the Kyng, and the Kyng commaunded the Duc of *Bokyngham* to putt hit on the right Hele of the said Lord *Henry*, and in likewise the liffst spore to the Lord Marques of *Dorsett*, and thenne the Kyng gird his sworde abowt hym, and after dubbed hym Knyght in manner accustomed, and then sett hym upon the Table in tyme

the Kyng hade in like fourme doubbed the Lords, and Sir *Thomas Stanley* &c. thenne Sir *William Sandys* bere my Lord *Henry* into the Chappell, and there at the high Aultre offred his fwerd, and the Lords after in ordre, and after all the Knyghts as they wer doubbed, and when my Lord was come out of the Qwere dore, the Kyngs maister Cooke toke his spores for his Fee, and in likewyse of every oder Knyght and a Noble. My said Lord dined in his owne Chambre, and the oder Lords, and new doubbed Knyghtes dined in the Parlement Chambre att a long table, all on oon fyde, and their Esquiers of honnour kerved before them, and the Kyng licensed them to ett their metts, bycause hyt was fastyng day, and after diner all thes new made Knights went into a great Chambre, and did off their mantells, fircotts, gyrdils, and coiffes, aud delivered them to thofficers of Armes, never better, and thenne clothed thaym in blew gownes with hodes, and immediately after they went to Counseill, and chose Sir *Rob. Litton* to gyve the Kyngs Grace thankyns.

Writs under the Great Seal for creating these Knights are entered in C. 34. in Off. Arm. p. 127.

Stow. p. 477. mentioneth these Persons to have been then made Knights, but doth not add Knights of the Bath.

In G. 2. penes me p. 347, 350 are the Names of their Esquires

Knights of the *Bath* made at the Creation of the Duke of *Tork Henry* Anno 10 of *Hen. 7*, with their Esquires of Honour on *Allballowen Even*.

Knights	Esquiers
The Duke of <i>Tork</i>	{ <i>Thomas Brandon</i>
	{ <i>Richard Puafey</i>
<i>Thomas Lord Harrington</i>	{ <i>Richard Hastings</i>
	{ <i>Thomas Digby</i>
<i>Henry Lord Clifford</i>	{ <i>William Morgan</i>
	{ <i>Edward Skelton</i>
<i>Lord Fitzwaren</i>	{ <i>Anthony Fetyplas</i>
	{ <i>Edward Wadbam</i>
<i>Lord Dacres of the South</i>	{ <i>William Bulstrode</i>
	{ <i>Thomas Woodshawe</i>
<i>Sir John Arundell</i>	{ <i>John Parker</i>
	{ <i>William Trefry</i>

Sir Thomas Stanley	{ Thomas Nevil
	{ George Bekynfall
Sir Walter Griffith	{ William Mornige
	{ Edward Beristed
Sir Gervase Clifton	{ His Brother
	{ John Carlton
Sir Robert Hardecourt	{ John Burley
	{ Thomas Wynfrey
Sir Edward Trafford	{ John Amereton
	{ Robert Gethyns
Sir Henry Marney	{ Walter Wingefeild
	{ John Sharp
Sir Thomas Bawd	{ Henry Udall
	{ Richard Marsh
Sir John Speak	{ Christopher Vyncent
	{ John Sigismond
Sir Roger Newburgh	{ Thomas Wathew
	{ Thomas Lukenor
Sir Ralph Rider	{ Thomas Ryder
	{ Morrice Butler
Sir Humfry Fulford	{ Christopher Langdall
	{ William Fival
Sir Robert Lytton	{ Symon Dysture
	{ Thomas Ferres
Sir Piers Edgcombe	{ Edward Aprice
	{ Henry Hamps
Sir Robert Clere	{ John Stanshall
	{ William Paston
Sir Thomas Fairfax	{ Hen. Wynstowe
	{ Alex. Hogston
Sir Richard Knightley	{ Richard Fisher
	{ Thomas Mortymer
Sir John Cheoke	{ John Whiting
	{ John Stephyns

In the abovementioned Rolle the Entry is only *Knyghts.*
made at the Creacion of Henry Duke of Yorke.

NUMB. LX.

Knights of the Bayne made at the Marriage of Prince Arthur,
17 Nov. 1501. 17 Hen. vii.

The Lord <i>Wylloughby,</i>	Sir <i>Thomas Hawte,</i>
The Lord <i>Clinton,</i>	Sir <i>Richard Warr,</i>
The son and heir of the Lord	Sir <i>Alnathe Malyverer,</i>
<i>Hastings, George,</i>	Sir <i>William Rede,</i>
Sir <i>Thomas Fenys,</i>	Sir <i>John Trevelyan,</i>
Sir <i>Gryffythe ap Sir Ryes Thomas</i>	Sir <i>John Foster,</i>
Sir <i>Robert Corbet,</i>	Sir <i>Walter Strykeland,</i>
Sir <i>John Wogan,</i>	Sir <i>Thomas Long,</i>
Sir <i>Thomas Laurence,</i>	Sir <i>John Philpot,</i>
Sir <i>Henry Rogers,</i>	Sir <i>John Lee of Wyltshire,</i>
Sir <i>William Walgraue,</i>	Sir <i>William Hartwell,</i>
Sir <i>William Seymour,</i>	Sir <i>Nicholas Gryffyn,</i>
Sir <i>Robert Throgmorton,</i>	Sir <i>Lancelot Thyrykyll,</i>
Sir <i>John Basset,</i>	Sir <i>John Norton,</i>
Sir <i>Thomas Grenefeld,</i>	Sir <i>Roger Ormeston,</i>
Sir <i>John Arundel of Treris,</i>	Sir <i>George Feldynge,</i>
Sir <i>Roger Strange,</i>	Sir <i>Thomas Curwyn,</i>
Sir <i>John Scrop of Castlecomb,</i>	Sir <i>Hugh Loder,</i>
Sir <i>John Paulet,</i>	Sir <i>Thomas Sampson,</i>
Sir <i>Walter Baskervyle,</i>	Sir <i>Richard Fowler,</i>
Sir <i>Robert Waterton,</i>	Sir <i>Thomas Woodhouse,</i>
Sir <i>John Gyfford,</i>	Sir <i>Philip Bothe,</i>
Sir <i>John Aston,</i>	Sir <i>John Iwardby,</i>
Sir <i>William Fylloll,</i>	Sir <i>Henry Frowyk,</i>
Sir <i>Thomas Ingilfeld,</i>	Sir <i>John Legbe of Stokewell,</i>
Sir <i>William Martyn,</i>	Sir <i>William Ascū,</i>
Sir <i>William Callwey,</i>	Sir <i>Thomas Kemp,</i>
Sir <i>George Putnam,</i>	Sir <i>Morgan Kydwelle,</i>
Sir <i>Nicholas Beron,</i>	Sir <i>John Gyllot.</i>

(58)

G. 2. penes me p. 348.

In the Roll they are stiled Knights of the Bath.

In the Ceremony of this Marriage, recited at large in M. 13. in Off. Arm. p. 50^b 51. it is remembred. " And that night " such as were appoyntid to be Knights of the Bathe re- " paired to their Baynes to the number of lviii, and there " that night the Kyng himself gaue unto fyue of them " ther

“ther chargs, after thordre and Lawe of the *Bathe*, and
 “commaunded therl of *Oxinford* gret Chamberleyn of *Eng-*
lond, under and by vertue of his auctoryte, after the same
 “fourme to encharge the remnaunt, &c.” The morrow of
 the *Wedensday* next folowyng, the Knights of the *Bathe*,
 that had entred into the beginnyng and certen requisits ap-
 perteynyng aftir the Lawe of Armys unto thordre, and de-
 gree of the *Bathe* were warnyd, and assignd unto their at-
 tendaunce uppon the Kings, grace to haue and enjoye the
 perfecte accomplisment of all the necessary poyntes, and
 dueties to that Solempne, and highe Knighthod apperteynyng,
 and so they were redy, and gaue their diligens, and wayting
 with ther horsys, swords, with their sporys uppon their helys,
 and that shuld be for them nedfull, and there were by the
 Kings hand in his great chambre at his Carpet, and under
 his ryche clothe of Estate dubyd, and girtid with their swords:
 They shuld aredyn also that tyme in their rialtie, but of
 that they were pardoned, bycause the weder was not clere,
 ne convenient bycause of moch wete. There was also at
 that season addid by the Kings will and pleasure xviii moo
 Knights, that had not been in the Baynes, and were dubyd
 Knights with the reherfid nombre of lviii. So in all there
 were threscore and xvi, whereof so great a nombre, and mul-
 titude haue not been seen had tofore in *Englond* at oon sea-
 son made.

NUMB. LXI.

Creatio Principis Henr. 19 Hen. vii. 18 Febr. in the Roll?
 formerly cited of Knights.

The Viscount <i>Lisle</i> ,	Sir <i>Myls Buff</i> ,
The Lord <i>Dacres</i> of the North	Sir <i>Edward Pomey</i> ,
<i>Thomas</i> ,	Sir <i>John Mordant</i> ,
Sir <i>Brian Stapilton</i> ,	Sir <i>James Hubert</i> .
Sir <i>Rauff Gray</i> ,	

NUMB. LXII.

W T. in Offic. Arm. p. 55^b
Devise for the Coronation of Hen. viii.

—Also in a Rayfing—the ancyent Nobles of *England*,
 the King hath appointed Twenty six of the most able per-
 sonnes, and of Honourable Blood, and auncient houses comen,
 being noe Knights of this his Realme, to take the order of
 Knighthood,

Knighthood, and to repare unto the *Tower* of *London* the twenty second day of *June*, and that day to serue the King of his Dinner, and they that shall bee made Knights to beare Dishes unto the Kinge that said day, in token that they shall never bare none after that day, and to be made Knights of the *Bathe* in the *Towre* of *London* the twenty third day of *June* next comeing, called the Even of his Coronation, and that all manner things that belongeth to soe great a Tryumphe may be done Honorably and orderly disposed, whose names doth followe in Order, as they were made, *viz.*

<i>Richard Ratclyff</i> Lord <i>Fytzwater</i>	Sir <i>Francis Cheney</i> ,
The Lord <i>Scroope</i> of <i>Bolton</i> ,	Sir <i>Henry Wyotte</i> ,
The Lord <i>Fitzhugh</i> ,	Sir <i>George Hastings</i> ,
The Lord <i>Mountjoye</i> ,	Sir <i>Thomas Metham</i> ,
The Lord <i>Dawbeney</i> ,	Sir <i>Thomas Bedingfeild</i> ,
The Lord <i>Broke</i> ,	Sir <i>John Shelton</i> ,
Sir <i>Morris Barkeley</i> ,	Sir <i>Gyles Allington</i> ,
Sir <i>Henry Clyfford</i> ,	Sir <i>John Trevanyon</i> ,
Sir <i>Thomas Knevet</i> ,	Sir <i>William Crowmer</i> ,
Sir <i>Andrew Wyndjor</i> ,	Sir <i>John Heydon</i> ,
Sir <i>Thomas Parre</i> ,	Sir <i>Edward Oxenbridge</i> ,
Sir <i>Thomas Boullayne</i> ,	Sir <i>Henry Sockveyle</i> ,
Sir <i>Richard Wentworth</i> ,	Sir <i>Stephen Fenings</i> , then <i>Mayre</i>
Sir <i>Henry Owtred</i> ,	of <i>London</i> .

The Order of the Creations of the Knights of the *Bathe* to be understande by the *Herraulds*, and to be conveyed.

That done the Kinge at his pleasure may goe unto his dinner, and that day at hath binn accuftomed, such noble personnes, as are then made Knights of the *Bathe* in order, as they were made to fyte in the Hall at one Board, yf it may bee, or at two Boards, and there to bee serued honourably, and their *Squires* to attend them.

NUM B. LXIII.

W T. in Offic. Arm. E. x penes me p. 19. E. xi p. 207^b
The Receiuing, Conveying, and Coronation of the Queene Anne
[of Bullen, on Frydaye 30 May 1533, 25 Hen. 8.]

In the morrowe at dynner, serued the King all such as were appointed by his Highnes to bee Knights of the *Bathe*, which after dinner were brought by their Chambers, and that

that night were bathed, and shreven, according to the old usage of *England*, and the next day in the morning, the King dubbed them according to the Ceremonies thereto belonging, whose names here ensue.

The Marques *Dorsett*,
 The Earle of *Derby*,
 The Lord *Clifford* [son and heir to the Earl of *Cumberland*,]
 The Lord *Fitzwater* [son and heir to the Earl of *Suffex*,]
 The Lord *Hastings* [son and heir to the Earl of *Huntington*,]
 The Lord *Montegle*,
 The Lord *Vaux*,
 Sir *Henry Parker* [son and heir to the Lord *Morley*,]
 Sir *William Windfore* [son and heir to the Lord *Windfore*,]
 Sir *John Mordaunt* [son and heir to the Lord *John Mordaunt*]
 Sir *Francis Weston*,
 Sir *Thomas Arundell*,
 Sir *John Hudleston*,
 Sir *Thomas Poynings*,
 Sir *Henry Savell*,
 Sir *George Fitzwilliams* of *Lyncolneshire*,
 Sir [*Henry*] *Fermey*. *Hollinshead*, p. 931.
Their Names in G. 2. penes me, p. 354.

NUMB. LXIV.

E. xiii. penes me, p. 54.

The Apparel for the Bathe for the Noble Prince, Prince Edward.
Imprimis, a longe gowne of Ruffet fatten made in maniere of an hermitts gowne.

Item, a mantell and Circote of redde fatten, or velvett furred, and edged with whyte mynever with longe lases of whyte silke, with two tassells for the same with a pere of whyte gloues hanginge at them.

Item, a longe blew violet gown furred and edged with whyte mynever, lyke unto the robe of a Bachelor of the Law, and a lase of whyte silke fett on the lefte sholder.

Item, a Coyse, and a pere of nether corffs.

Item, a pere of hofe and filke blacke, the folles of black leather called * *Chaffembles*.

Item, a pere of spurres of copper and gilte.

* *That is, Chauffes Semelles de cuir, mentioned in the Ceremonial.*

Item, a swourde, the hilts gilte, lyk an arming swourd, the scabbard and girdell of whyt velvett withoute any harneys.

Then the Apparell for the creation of the noble Prince, Prince *Edward*, is specified, and also the robes of the Parlement for the noble Prince, Prince *Edward*.

Ibid. p. 56^b

Item, the Kings Highnesse must directe his Lettres to be made to fuche, as shal be made Knights of the *Bathe*, and to receive the Order of Knighthood in the mornenge of the sayde Creacion, and *Garter* to have their names to prepare for fuche things, as to that apperteinethe.

NUMB. LXV.

G. 2. *penes me*, p. 355.

For the Bath at the Coronation of K. Edward VI. Knights nomynate of the *Bathe* the daye of the Kings Majesties Coronation, the xx daye of *February*, Anno 1546.

E. xi. p. 217^b

The Duke of <i>Suffolke</i> ,	Sir <i>George Norton</i> ,
The Earl of <i>Hertford</i> ,	Sir <i>Valentine Knightley</i> ,
The Earl of <i>Oxford</i> , [<i>Hertford</i>	Sir <i>Robert Lytton</i> ,
in E. xi.]	Sir <i>George Vernon</i> ,
The Earl of <i>Ormond</i> ,	Sir <i>John Porte</i> ,
The Lord <i>Matravers</i> ,	Sir <i>Thomas Fosselyn</i> ,
The Lord <i>Talbot</i> ,	Sir <i>Edmond Moleneux</i> , sergeant
The Lord <i>Strange</i> ,	of the law,
The Lord <i>Herberte</i> ,	Sir <i>Christopher Barker</i> , <i>Garter</i>
The Lord <i>Lysley</i> ,	King at Armes,
The Lord <i>Cromewell</i> ,	Sir <i>James Halles</i> ,
The Lord <i>Hastings</i> ,	Sir <i>William Bapthorpe</i> ,
The Lord <i>Charles Brandon</i> ,	Sir <i>Thomas Brykenell</i> ,
The Lord <i>Scopes</i> son,	Sir <i>Thomas Nevell</i> ,
The Lord <i>Windsor</i> son & heire,	Sir <i>Angell Mareyn Italien de</i>
Sir <i>Francis Russell</i> ,	<i>Cremona</i> ,
Sir <i>Anthonie Browne</i> ,	Sir <i>John Holcrofte</i> ,
Sir <i>Richard Devereux</i> ,	Sir <i>John Cutt</i> ,
Sir <i>Henry Seimour</i> ,	Sir <i>Henry Terrell</i> ,
Sir <i>John Gates</i> ,	Sir <i>William Sherington</i> ,
Sir <i>Anthony Cook</i> of <i>Essex</i> ,	Sir <i>Wimond Carewe</i> ,
Sir <i>Alex. Vmpton</i> of <i>Oxford</i> ,	Sir <i>William Sneath</i> .

W. T. p. 109^b Ceremonial of the Coronation of Ed. VI. — It was ordained, that a certain number of Knights should be made instead of the *Bath*, because the time was soe short, that they could not bee made of the *Bath*, according to the Ceremonies thereunto appertayning.

Then it was at the same time ordered by the Kings Royal Majesty, with the advice of his most noble Council, that they should be made by his Highness, being crowned instead of the *Bath*, as aforesaid, and soe Sir *William Paget* Secretary did read their names, and they were called by *Quarter* Principal King at Arms, to receive, as after followeth, &c.

Then because they were nominate of the *Bath*, and made with soe greate Royaltie, they were commanded to pay the Dewtyes of money, every of them after their Degrees, and Estates, double the sume of other Knights.

Acta Conc. Priv. 1 Ed. 6. Sunday 6 Febr. at the *Tower*, this day also according to thorder concluded upon by thauthorite aforesaid, and by vertue of the Kings Majesties letters Patents under the great Seale made forth unto the Lord Protector, autorising him so to doe, Our said sovereign lord and Master that now is, received the high and Noble Order of Knighthood by the said lord Protectors hands, &c.

NUMB. LXVI.

Pat 1 Mar. p. 2. m. 10 d.

Mary, by the Grace of God, &c. To all men, to whome these presents shall come, Gretinge.

Where, for the more adornement of our Kingly Estate, and dignitie Riall, and for the nobility of blode, good service, and other good qualities of many our servants, and other subjects, We be resolved to call certain of them to the ordre of Knighthood.

We let you wit, that, for the special truste, and confidence, which we have reposed in our right trustie and right well-belovid Cosyn and Counsealoure *Henry Erle of Arundell*, we have appoynted, and by these presentes do appoint, and auctorise him, for Us, and in our Name, and by our auctority, to doe, and excercyse everie thinge and thinges in our behalfe to be doone and excercised, for the full making of such, and so manye persons Knightes, within

the time of two daies next ensuing the date hereof, as by us shall be named, or by himself may be thought mete, so as he exceede not in the whole the Number of Threescore.

And our farther pleasure is, that everie person, so to be advanced, or made Knight by our said Cosyn and Councelloure, shall have, hold, and enjoy the said Order of the Knightwood, with the Name, Title, Dignitie, and all other Prerogatives thereunto-belonginge, in as large and ample manner, as anie other Knighte, or Knights of like Degree, being made in the tyme of oure Progenitors, have, and of right ought to have had, or enjoyed.

In cujus rei, &c.

Teste Regina apud *Westm.* decimo septimo die *Octobris.*
Per ipsum Regem.

Printed in Rymer, vol. xv. p. 350.

NUMB. LXVII.

W. T. in Officio Armorum, p. 123.

Coronation of Queen Mary.

Alsoe in rayfing the auncient Nobles of *England*, the Queenes Highnes appoynted xv of the most able persons, and of Honorable Blood and Auncient houses, being noe Knights of this her realme, to take the Order of Knighthood, and to repayre unto her *Towre of London* on *Fryday* the 28th of *September*, the day after her Graces coming thither. And there according to the Order every man to beare unto the Queenes Majestie at her first course for dynner, a Dish of meate, who after were brought to their Chamber, and the same night were Bathed and Shrevin, according to the olde usage of *England*, and the next day in the morninge after Masse, in the Queenes Majesties Presence, being under her Clothe of Estate in the Chamber of Presence, were dubbed Knights by the Earle of *Arrundell*, Lord Steward of the Queenes house, which had Commission of her Grace to doe the same, and that according to the Ceremony thereto belonging, whose names hereafter doe ensewe, and the names of the Esquiers which did attend upon them, *viz.*

George White and *George Terrell* The Earl of *Devonshire*,
Ralph Chandler and *Mr. Drewry* The Earl of *Surreys* son,

Mr.

Mr <i>Tanner</i> and <i>William Riser</i>	The Lord of <i>Cardiff</i> .
Mr <i>Arundell</i> and Mr <i>Norreys</i>	The Lord of <i>Burgavenny</i> .
Mr <i>Frankwell</i> , Mr <i>Evered</i> ,	The Lord <i>Barkley</i> .
Mr <i>Hogat</i> , Mr <i>Markham</i> ,	The Lord <i>Lomley</i> .
Mr <i>Harman</i> , Mr <i>Brakenbury</i> ,	The Lord <i>Mountjoy</i> .
Mr <i>Winkefeld</i> , Mr <i>Jo. Barkley</i> ,	{ Sir <i>Hen. Clynton</i> [son of Lord <i>Clinton</i>]
<i>Robert Alee</i> , <i>Richard Foster</i> ,	{ Sir <i>William Pallet</i> [son of Lord <i>St. Johns</i>]
<i>Richard Wight</i> , Mr <i>Sackfeild</i> ,	{ Sir <i>Hugh Rich</i> [son of Lord <i>Rich</i>]
<i>Robert Warner</i> , <i>Edmond Lisle</i> ,	{ Sir <i>Henry Paget</i> [son of Lord <i>Paget</i>]
<i>George Nevel</i> , Mr <i>Smyth</i> ,	Sir <i>Henry Parker</i> .
<i>Robert Grewe</i> , Mr <i>Manwayring</i> ,	Sir <i>Rob. Rochester</i> (Comptroller)
<i>George Ferningham</i> , Mr <i>Legens</i> ,	Sir <i>Henry Ferningham</i> .
Mr <i>Dauncy</i> , <i>Anthony Maxell</i> ,	Sir <i>William Dormer</i> .

The Order of their Ceremony aforesaid, was understood by the Office of Armes, and soe convey'd unto the place appoynted for them to dyne, and that every man in order, as they were made Knights sate at one Table, And as the Order was all on one syde, and there were served honorably, and their Esquiers attendant on them till after dynner, and then tooke their leave every man of his Knight, of whome he had the Governance, and received their Fees according as the Officers of Armes declared by their antient President.

NUM B. LXVIII.

G. 2 penes me p. 360.

The Order of the Knights of the Bath at the Coronation of Queen Mary.

First on *Friday* all the Knights came into the *Tower*, and came into the Chamber of Presence, and there the Gentlemen Ushers did sweare them, and then all they did goe and eate a morzell of meate, And at the second course every one of them did beare a dish to the Queene, and did kneele downe, and did take the Sayes. And then the Gentlemen Ushers did lead them into the *Great Tower*, whereas the *Bath* was, and so there they remayned till fixe a clocke at night, and then the table was covered, and a Bankett sett on it, And then every Knight

Knight was ledd betwixt the Esquires unto the said Banquet, And soe they were sett all on one syde, and the Esquires did waite on them; And when the banquet was ended, their Esquires did lead them into the Bath chamber agen with Harrolds going before them, And all the Banquet tyme the Sagbutts and Violls did playe; And after that all the said Knights were shaven, saving those that the Quene did pardon, And that done, they did put off all their Clothes, and did putt on a linnen Breech, and so ther Feete were wasched, and satt in the Bath all nakyd, till that my Lord of *Arundell*, my Lord Chamberleyn, the Master of the Horses, Secretary *Peter* and Sir *Thomas Wharton* presenting the Quenes person did come and reade to them this ferten Othe. Right Dear Brother Grett worship be this Ordre unto every of you, and Almighty God give you praying of all Knighthood, Thys ys the ordre of Knighthood, You shall honour God above all things, You shall be stedfast in the Faith of Holly Church, and the same maynteyne, and defende to your Power, You shall love your Sovereigne above all erthly Cretures, And for your Sovereignes right live and die, You shall defend Widowes, Maydens, and Orphans in their right, You shall suffer no extorcyon, as farr forth as you maie, nor sitt in place, where any wrongfull judgement shall be given to your knowledge, and as great Honour be this noble Order unto you, as ever it was to any of your Progenitors; and that done they went all to their bedds, and so slept till about iv of the clocke in the morning, and then they did arise, being soundyd with the ministrells, and did putt on their clothes and apparell Ruffett, like Bachelors of the Lawe with a Hood furryd with white Menyver, and being leade with both their Esquires to the Chappell, and then ymediatly were shriven, and then certain servis and masse was said, All they did offer a little taper with two pence, or a groat in it; And that don, all they received the Sacrament, and then they were led holme againe into ther Chambers, whereas the Bathing tubbs were taken awaie, and so they went unto their bedds, and about eight of the Clock on the *Saterdaie* there came ferteyn Knights, and did putt on their Shirts and doublits, and so they did arise and make them ready, and then every one of them did put on a *Cyrcott* of red Taffeta, and mantle of red Taffeta with a great lace of white filke with a grett knopp of gold thereuppon, And a
paie

paire of gloves tyed in the midst of the said lace. And about cleaven of the clocke of the same daie, they went downe lede betwixt two Knights, every one of them having a Page well appointed bearing a sword with a gilt pomell and a white Scarbert of Velvet without any Chape, having a paire of gilte Spurrs hanging about the hylts of the seyd Sworde, and their two Esquires going before them, and entering out of the said Tower or chamber, every Page and his Knight did leape on their horses, the Knyghts horses having every one a blacke leather Saddle with white egge, a longe rayne, and a broad rayne eggd with white also, and the headstall of the bridle having a Crosse of latyn guilded, and the Patrell having a Crosse likewise, And so they did ride to the Hall dore, and ther did alight and so went into the Hall, and ther stood a both Sides on the Hall, till the Lord *Chamberleyn* sent to the Quene, and answer being brought from the Quene, the Page and his two Esquires went before him, hee being ledd betwixt his two Knights upp into the Chamber of Presence, where the Quene did come out, And then he with his two Knights and his Page and his two Esquires before him did make, coming to the Quene iii Corseys, and knelyd downe all before the Quene, and the Page did kisse the Sword, and delivered it to my Lord *Chamberleyn* kneeling next to the Quene, and the Quene did take the Sword, and did geyrd it about the said Knyght, and delivered to the two Knights that did lead him the Spurrs, and did command them to put on the Spurrs, and last of all comandyd to kisse his Knee, the one the right, and the other the left Knee, and then they did hold their gloves betwixt their fingers, over their heads, And my Lord of *Arundell* being Lord Great Mastre did laye his hand uppon his Shoulder, saying, Hear, be trewe Knyghte, and so did arise, And so after all they had so don, they did make humble Courtesies, and were ledd downe, as they came up, saving their Pages, and so went to the Chapell, and their did offer upp their Swords unto the Priest, and so were brought out of the Chapell ledd with their Knights, their Esquiers then folowinge them, And at their entring out of the Chapell their stood a rounde table coveryd with a white Cloth, And the Quenes master Cooke with a grett dressing knife, saying theis words Sir Knight, see thou bee a true Knight and to performe thine Oath, or else I will strike the off by theis Sporres, and
so

so received all their Spottes, and vi s. viii d. in money, and then they all came into the Hall, and did sett downe all on one syde, and were seruyd with three Corfys at their dynners, And that don, they did putt off their red - - - - - and did give it to the Harholds, and then every one of them did put on a violet gowne clofe furryd with white - - - - - and a hode like a master of Art hoode, and a white - - - - - filke without aglets, which was tyed on the left Shoulder - - - - they take their horsys, and did ryde togyther through *London*, till they came to *Whitehall* next before the Counsell, and at night they changed into their owne apparell, and the next daie of the Coronation all they serued the Queene, every man bearing a disch, and so they made an ende bearing the iv courses.

N U M B. LXIX.

Pat. 1 Eliz. p. 4. m. 5. d.

Elizabeth, by the grace of God, Quene of *England*, *France*, and *Ireland*, Defendour of the Faith &c. To all men, to whome this presentes shall come Greting.

Whereas, Wee

Mynding to procede to the solemnitie of our coronation, in such and like honorable sorte, as in the Coronation of oure Progenitors hath been accustomed, and as to oure Estate, and Dignitie Royall apperteyneth, have, both for the more Adornement of the Feast of our said coronation, and for the nobilitie of blood, good service, and other good Qualities of many our seruauntes, and other Subjects, resolved to call certain of them to th'ordre of Knighthood.

We let you wete, that, for the special trust and confidence, which we have reposed in our right Trustie and right beloved Cosen and Counsaylour, *Henry Erl of Arundell*, Lord Steward of our Household, we have appoynted, and by this presentes do appoint and auctorise him, for us, and in our name, and by our auctoritie, not onlie to do and exercise everie thinge, and thinges, on our behalfe to be done and exercised for the full making of those Knightes of the *Bathe*, whome we have caused to be speciallye called for that purpose, but also to make and ordeyn such, and so many other persons *Knights* within the tyme of two daies next ensuing the date hereof, as by us shall be named, or by himself may be thought mete ;

mete; so as he exceede not in th' ole the Number of Thirtie.

And our further Pleasure is, that every Person, so to be advanced, or made Knight by our said Cosen and Councelour, shall have, houlde, and enyoie the said order of Knight-hood, with the name, title, and Dignitye, and all other Prerogatyves thereunto belonging, in as large, and ample manner, as any other Knight, or Knights of like degree, being made in the tyme of any our Progenitours, have, and of right ought to have had, or enjoyed.

In Witnes whereof &c.

Witnes ourself at *Westm.* the xiv day of *Fannary*,

Per ipsam Reginam.

Printed in Rymer vol. xv. p. 497.

N U M B. LXX.

I Partit. Book in the Herald's Office, p. 198.

Knights of the Bath at the Coronation of Qu. Eliz.

The Lord Darcy of the North,	Sir John Souwche,
The Lord Sheffield,	Sir Nycholas Poynes,
The Lord Darcy of Chicbe,	Sir John Barkeley,
Sir Robert Rich,	Sir Edward Umpton,
Sir Roger North,	Sir Henry Weston,
	Sir George Speke.

N U M B. LXXI.

Knights of the Bath made at the Coronation of King James, which Coronation was on 25 July 1603.

C. 15. penes me.

Sir Philip Herbert, after Earle of Montgomery. [*Shropshire.*]
 Thomas Barkley, Lord Barkley. [*Gloucestershire.*]
 Sir William Evers, after Lord Evers. [*Yorkshire.*]
 Sir George Wharton, after Lord Wharton. [*Yorkshire.*]
 Sir Robert Rich, after Earle of Warwick. [*Essex.*]
 Sir Robert Carre, of the Bed-chamber of his Majesty, after Earl of Somerset. [*Northumberland.*]
 Sir John Egerton, after Earle of Bridgewater. [*Cheshire.*]
 Sir Henry Compton, third Brother to William Earle of Northampton.]

- Sir *Thomas Erskine*, sonne to the Earle of *Marre*. [*Starling*.]
 Sir *William Aufuddur*. [*Lowdean*.]
 Sir *Patricke Murray*. [*Murray*.]
 Sir *James Hay* Lord *Ister*. [*Glasgow*.]
 Sir *John Lyndsey*. [*Lowdean*.]
 Sir *Richard Preston*, after Earle of *Desmond*. [*Northumberland*.]
 Sir *Oliver Cromwell* of *Huntingtonshire*. [*Huntington*.]
 Sir *Edward Stanly* of *Lancaashire*.
 Sir *William Herbert* of *Montgomery*, after Lord *Powys*. [*Montgomery*.]
 Sir *Foulke Grevell*, after Lord *Brooke*. [*Warwick*.]
 Sir *Francis Fanne*, after Earl of *Westmerland*. [*Kent*.]
 Sir *Robert Chichester*, of *Devonshire*.
 Sir *Robert Knowles* of *Berkshire*.
 Sir *William Clifton* of *Notinghamshire*. [*Huntingdon*] [*Somerset*.]
 Sir *Francis Fortescue* of *Devonshire*. [*Bucks*] [*Oxon*.]
 Sir *Edward Corbet* of *Sbropshire*.
 Sir *Edward Herbert*, after Lord of *Castle-Iland* in *Ireland*, and
 Baron *Chirbury*. [*Montgomery*.]
 Sir *Thomas Langton* of *Lancaashire*.
 Sir *William Pope* of *Oxfordshire*.
 Sir *Arthur Hopton* of *Somersetshire*.
 Sir *Charles Morison* Knight and Baronet of *Hartforshire*.
 [*Northampton*.]
 Sir *Francis Leigh* of *Warwickeshire*. [*Surrey*.]
 Sir *Edward Mountagu*, after Lord *Mountague* of *Boughton* in
Northamptonshire. [*Leicestershire*.]
 Sir *Edward Stanhop* of *Torkeshire*. [*Northampton*.]
 Sir *Peter Manwood* of *Kent*.
 Sir *Robert Harley* of *Herefordshire*.
 Sir *Thomas Strickland* of *Torkeshire*.
 Sir *Christopher Hatton* of *Northamptonshire*.
 Sir *Edward Griffin* of *Northamptonshire*. [*Leicestershire*.]
 Sir *Robert Bevill* of *Huntingtonshire*.
 Sir *William Welby* of *Lincoln*, in C. 15. and in G. 2. p. 366 b.
 Sir *Edward Harwell* of *Worcestershire*.
 Sir *John Mallet* of *Somersetshire*.
 Sir *Walter Aston* of *Staffordshire* Knight and Baronet.
 Sir *Henry Gawdy* of *Essex*. [*Norfolk*.]

Sir Richard Musgrave of Westmerland Knight and Baronet.
[Cumberland.]

Sir John Stowell of Somersetshire.

Sir Richard Amcots of Lincolnshire.

Sir Thomas Leeds of Suffolke. [Suffex.]

Sir Thomas Fermyn of Norfolk. [Suffolk.]

Sir Ralph Hare of Hartford. [Norfolk.]

Sir William Forster of Buckinghamshire. [Berks.]

Sir George Speake of Somersetshire.

Sir George Hyde of Barkeeshire. [Devonshire.]

Sir Anthony Felton of Suffolke.

Sir Anthony Brown of Northamptonshire. [Lincoln.]

Sir Thomas Wise of Essex. [Devon.]

Sir Kobert Chamberlaine of Oxfordshire.

Sir Anthony Palmer of Suffolke. [Suffex.] [Kent.]

Sir Edward Heron of Lincolnshire.

Sir Henry Burton of Leicestershire. [Surrey.]

Sir Robert Barker of Suffolke.]

Sir William Norris of Lancashire.

Sir Roger Bodenham of Herefordshire.

Number 62.

King James 22 July in his first Year commissions four of the Nobility to exercise every Thing for the full making of Knights of the Bath, and to make so many other Persons Knights, within the Time of two Days next ensuing the Date, as by the King shall be named, or by them, or any three, or two of them, so as they exceed not in the whole the Number of threescore. G. 2. penes me p. 330.

N U M B. LXXII.

G. 2. penes me p. 263.

James &c. To all &c. Greeting, Whereas we minding to proceed to the Solemnity of our Coronation in such like honourable Sort, as in the Coronations of Our Progenitors hath been accustomed, and as to Our State, and Dignity Royal apperteineth, have, both for the more Advancement of the Feast of our said Coronation, and for the Nobility of Blood, good Service, and other good Qualities of many our Servants and other our Subjects, resolved to call certain of them to the Order of Knighthood, We let you weet, that for the espetiall Trust and Confidence, which we have reposed in Our Right

H 2

Trusty

Trusty, and well beloved Cousins and Councillors, *Edward* Earl of *Worcester* our Earl Marshal of *England*, *Charles* Earl of *Nottingham* our High Admiral of *England*, *Thomas* Earl of *Suffolk* our Chamberlain of our House, and our right Trusty and well-beloved *John* Lord *Lumley*, We have appointed, and by these Presents do appoint, and authorize them, or any three of them, or any two of them for us, and in our Name, and by our Authority, not only to do and exercise every thing and things in our behalf to be done and exercised for the full making of Knights of the *Bath*, whome we have caused to be espetically callen for that purpose, but also to make and ordain such, and so many other Persons *Knights* within the time of two days next ensuing the Date hereof, as by us shall be named, or by them, or any three, or two of them may be thought meet, so as they exceed not in the whole the Number of Sixty: And our farther Pleasure is, that every Person to be advanced, or made Knight by our said Commissioners, or any three, or two of them shall have, hold, and enjoy the said Order of *Knight-hood* with the Name, Title, Dignity, and all Prerogatives thereunto belonging, in as large, and ample manner, as any other Knight, or Knights of like Degree, being made in the time of any our Progenitors have, and of right ought to have had, and enjoyed. In Witnesse &c. 22 *July*, anno regni *Anglia* &c. primo & *Scotia* xxxvi.

N U M B. LXXIII.

C. 15. p. 19.

On *Saterday* being *Twelfth* Even the fifth of *January* 1604. [2 *Fac.* 1.] at *Whitehall*, *Charles* Duke of *Albany* the King's Son was made Knight of the *Bath*, and with him xi others,

Charles, Duke of *Yorke*.

Sir Robert Bartu, Lord *Willoughby* of *Eresby*, after Earl of *Lindsey*.

Sir William Compton, Lord *Compton*, after Earl of *Norhampton*.

Sir Grey Bridges, Lord *Chandos*.

Sir Francis Norris, Lord *Norris*, of *Ricot*, after Earl of *Berkshire*.

Sir William Cecill [Son and Heir to the Viscount *Cranborne*,] after Earl of *Salisbury*.

Sir

Sir *Allan Percy*, brother to *Henry* Earl of *Northumberland*.

Sir *Francis Mannois*, after Earl of *Rutland*.

Sir *Francis Clifford*, brother to the Earl of *Cumberland*,
C. 15. and also in G. 2. p. 367.

Sir *Thomas Somersset* of *Cassell* in *Ireland*, [second son to the Earl of *Worcester*.]

Sir *Thomas Howard*, [second sonne to the Earl of *Suffolk*] after Earl of *Berkeshire*.

Sir *John Harrington*, sonne [and heir] to *John* Lord *Harrington* of *Exton*.

NUMB. LXXIV.

G. 2. *penes me*, p. 375.

The Duke, being but four Years old, was carried, and in the Morning had on his Hermits Weeds, not of Fryers-gray, (as the rest of the Knights had) but of a Ruffet Sattin; after Service they all shifted into Robes of Crimson Taffata, wherein they were made, sat at Dinner in, and at Evening Prayer offered up their Swords, which they presently redeemed with an Angel in Gold, the next Day they were all in Purple Sattin, wherein they dined, having a white Lace on the Shoulder. The next Day following (being Twelfth-Day and *Sunday*) the said Duke was created Duke of *York*, in Manner and Form following, &c.

Shortly after the said Duke, and the Noblemen aforesaid came into the great Chamber, where they all dined, at a Table set cross, a little beneath the Cloth of Estate, then there placed, and at a Side-Table, over-against the Chimney sat the Knights of the *Bath*, &c. *Memorand.* That after the Knights of the *Bath* came the first time out of the Chappell, they had their Oaths given them in the Gallery, and after they went, and shifted themselves into their Robes of Crimson Taffata, as before.

NUMB. LXXV.

1 *Cerem. in Offic. Arm.* p. 220.

The second of June [1610.] these undernamed and chosen to be of the Order of the Bath, by Bill signed with the King's Hand, repaired to *Durham-House* in the Afternoon.

Henry Vere, Earl of *Oxford*.

George Lord *Gordon*, [son and heir to the Earl of *Huntley*]
after Marquis *Huntley*. *Henry*

Henry Lord Clifford, after Earl of *Cumberland*.

Henry Ratcliffe, Lord *Fitzwater* [son and heir to the Earl of *Suffex*.]

Edward Bourcher, [Lord *Fitzwarren*] after Earl of *Bath*.

Francis Lord Hay, [son and heir to the Earl of *Athol* in *Scotland*] after Earl of *Carlile*.

James Lord Erskin, [son and heir to the Earl of *Mar* in *Scotland*.]

Thomas Windsor, then Lord *Windsor*.

Thomas Lord Wentworth, after Earl of *Cleveland*.

Sir Charles Somerser, [third] sonne to *Edward* Earl of *Worcester*.

Sir Edward Somerser, [fourth] sonne to the said Earl of *Worcester*.

Sir Thomas Ratcliffe, sonne to the Earl of *Suffex*.

Sir Francis Stuart, sonne to the Earl of *Murray*.

Sir William Styward, sonne to the Lord *Blantyre*.

Sir Ferdinando Sutton, eldest sonne to the Lord *Dudley*.

Sir Henry Cary, [sonne and heir to the Lord *Hunsdon*] after Earl of *Dover*.

Sir Oliver St. John, Lord *St. John* [sonne and heir to the Lord *St. John* of *Bletso*] after Earl of *Bullingbrook*.

Sir Gilbert Gerrard [sonne and heir to the Lord *Gerrard*] after Lord *Gerrard* of *Gerrard Bromeley*.

Sir Charles Stanhop [sonne and heir to the Lord *Stanhop*] after Lord *Stanhop* of *Harington*.

Sir Edward Bruce [sonne and heir to the Lord *Kinlosse*] after Lord *Kinlosse*.

Sir William Sidney, Lord *Sidney*, [sonne to the Viscount *Lisle*] after Earl of *Leicester*.

Mavin Touchet [second] sonne to *George* Lord *Awdley*, Earl of *Castle-Haven* in *Ireland*.

Sir Peregrine Bartu, brother to the Earl of *Lindsey*.

Sir Henry Rich, second brother to the Earl of *Warwick*, after Earl of *Holland*.

Sir Edward Sheffeld, [sonne and heir to the Lord *Sheffeld*] after Earl of *Mulgrave*.

Sir William Cavendish, [brother to the Lord *Ogle*] after made Viscount *Mansfield*, and Earl of *Newcastle*.

These

These aboute six of the Clock, being set in order by the Kings of Arms, proceeded singly in their usual apparell (the younger foremost) about the Hall, and when they ascended the stairs, they pored together two and two, and so entred the Chapell, the Heralds standing upon the halfe-pace, while they did their obeyfance toward the Communion-Table: When they had stood a little before their Stalls, with the like obeyfance, they ascended into theirs in such manner, as the Knights of the *Garter*, and heard Evenfong, and returned to the Chamber appointed for their supper, with Escutcheons of their several Arms, and after to their Baths.

The next morning, being *Sunday*, they put on the Hermetical Garments, which were girt unto them, and with their Coifs of linen with their hoods plucked over, proceeded in like manner, but between their Esquires or Governors, the Musicians and the Heralds preceding; at the stair-head they paired, and so entred, the younger first, and placed themselves accordingly as the night before; when service was ended, the Earl of *Worcester* Earl Marshal for the time, the Earl of *Suffolk* lord Chamberlain, who came into the Chapel (at Service time) sitting upon a forme on the south side ministred the Oath unto them, *Garter* holding the Book, first to the Earl of *Oxford*, and then by pairs brought up by two Heralds, the two Earls reading the Oath unto them *alternis vicibus*, which done the Court and a Voidy or sweet meats were brought into the Chapell to the Knights, who then retiring to their Bed-chamber, and Bathing-chamber, they devested themselves of their Hermetical Weeds, put on white boots, a furcoat of Red Taffata, and a Robe of the same edged with white, and so ridd to the Court, first the Trumpets, then the Heralds, then the Knights between their Governors, with their Pages riding before them, carrying a sword in a white scabbard with a Belt, with gilt hilts, and a pare of gilt spurrs hanging thereupon; being alighted at the Court gate, the Earl of *Oxford* preceded with his Page before him, between his two Governors, and the next followed according to their priority into the Hall, where being placed with their Governors in a semicircle forme, the King after came down, accompanied with the Nobility, (but no Bishops) and at first the Earl of *Oxford* was presented unto him sitting under his State by the Governors,

the

the Page delivering the sword to the Lord Chamberlaine, and he to the King, who girt it about the Earls Neck, and the Earl of *Northampton* put on his spurrs, and so the rest were received accordingly: But, when at the beginning, some of the Nobility mistook the left spur for the right, the King, as though it were ominous, seemed offended, and thenceforth they put on only the right spur, the King hastning to the Sermon, and their Pages, when they came down, did put on the other. Then they returned to *Durham-house* in such Order as they came, where they sat down at Table, but in a modest temperance did eat nothing, but rising from the Table, left the meat to their Governors and Esquires. About six of the Clock in the afternoon, they rid to the Court orderly againe, and so proceeded to the Vespers, in the End whereof before the *Creed*, they offered the swords into the Dean of the Chapells hands, redeeming the same with an Angell offered into a Bafon held by a Minister in a Cope thereby. The Dean used these Words at the re-delivery of their swords; *By the Oath, that you received this day, remember to use your sword to the Glory of God, the Defence of his Word, of your Sovereign and Country, and to the maintenance of Justice*; and so returned by the upper end to their Stalls, where they satt, while the Versicles and Collects were read, and the Anthem sung, &c. And then descended from their Stalls, and so passed forth, the King's Master-Cook with his Chopping-knife admonishing them of their Oath, and taking their horses, returned to *Durham-house*, where they parted every one to his own.

N U M B. LXXVI.

G. 2. penes me p. 335.

The manner of the Creation of the Knights of the Bath, and the Ceremonies observed in solemnizing the same.

According to the Order given from the Commissioners appointed for the oversight and directory of these Ceremonies, the Lords, and others that were to receive the honorable Order of the *Bath*, repaired on *Saturday* the second of *June*, to *Durham-house* in the *Strand*, and there in the afternoon heard Evening prayer, observing no other Ceremony at that time, but only passing through the Hall, the Heralds going before them with their Coats upon their Arms unto the
Chapell,

Chapell, from whence, after Service ended, they returned unto the Chamber, they were to sup in.

Their supper was prepared at one Table, and all sat upon one side of the same, every man having an Escutcheon of his Arms placed over his head, and certain of the Kings Officers being appointed to attend them, in this manner having taken their Repast, the Table was removed, and several Bedds made ready for their lodging in the same place, after the same manner, all on one side, and each one, as afore, right under Escutcheon of his own Arms, their Beds were Palets with Canopies of red Say, but they used no Curtains; the Knights in the mean while were withdrawn into the Bathing-Chamber, which was the next Room to that they supped in, where for each of them was provided a several Bathing-Tub, which was lined both within and without with white Linnen, and covered with red Say, after the Bath they betook themselves to Rest. Early the next morning they were awakened with Musick, and at their uprising invested in their Hermits habits, which was a gounce of gray Cloth girded close, and Hood of the same, with a linnen Coyse under it, and an handkerchief hanging at his Girdle, cloth stockings soled with leather, but no Shoes; and thus apparalled, their Esquires going with the Heralds wearing their Coats of Arms, and sundry sorts of Wind Instruments going before them, they proceeded from their lodging down through the Hall, the meanest in order formost, as the night before, till they came to the Chapell, where, after Service done, their Oath was ministred unto them by the Earl of *Worcester*, and the Earl of *Suffolk*, in a solemn and ceremonious manner, all of them standing forth before their Stalls, and at their coming out making low Reverence towards the Altar, by which the Commissioners sate, then were they brought up by the Heralds by two at once, the chiefeft first, and so the rest, till all successively had received their Oaths, which in Substance was, That above all things they should honour God and maintain true Religion, love their Sovereign, serve their Country, help Maidens, Widows, and Orphans, and to the uttermost of their Power cause Equity and Justice to be observed; This done, whilst they were yet in the Chapell, Wine and Sweet-meats were brought, then they departed to their Chamber to be dis-
I
robed

robed of their Hermits Weeds, and now revested again in Robes of Crimfon Taffata lined with white Sarcenet, having white Hats on their Heads with white Feathers, white Boots on their Leggs, and white Gloves tyed to the Strings of their Mantles, all which performed, they mounted on horseback, their Saddles being of black Leather, and Bridles of the same, with white Croffes upon their Breasts, and Cruppers of their Horses, each Knight between his two Esquires, well appalled, with Footmen attending, and his Page riding before him, carrying his Sword with the Hilt upward, and his Spurrs hanging thereon. In this Order they ranked every Man according to his Degree, the best or chiefest first, they rode fair and softly toward the Court-Gate, they were conducted by the Heralds, and others appointed for that Purpose, into the Hall, where His Majesty sitting under his Cloth of Estate, gave them their Knight-hood in this Manner. First, the principal Lord, that is to receive the Order comes, led by his two Esquires, and his Page before him bearing his Sword and Spurrs, and kneeled down before his Majesty, the Lord Chamberlain takes the Sword of the Page, and delivered it to the King, who puts the Belt over the Neck of the Knight aslope his Breast, placing the Sword under his left Arm, then two Noblemen of the Chief about the King put on his Spurrs, and so is the Ceremony performed in this Sort, the Earl of *Oxford*, which was the Principal of this Number, being first created, the rest were all consequently knighted alike; and when the Solemnity thereof was fully finished, then all returned again in order as they came, saving some small Difference, in that the youngest or meanest Knight went foremost, and their Pages behind them; Coming back to *Durham*-house, their Dinner was ready prepared in the same Room, and after the same Fashion as their Supper was the Night before, that being sat, they were not to taste of any thing that stood before them, but with a modest Carriage and graceful Abstinence to refrain, divers kinds of sweet Musick being play'd the while, and after convenient Time of sitting, to arise and withdraw themselves, leaving the Table furnished to their Esquires and Pages: And about four of the Clock in the Afternoon they rode again to Court to their Service in the King's Chapel, keeping the same Order they

they did at their return from thence in the Morning, every Knight riding between his Esquires, and his Page following; At their Entrance into the Chapel, the Heralds conducting them, they make a solemn Reverence; the youngest Knight beginning, the rest orderly insuing, and so one after another take their Standing before their Stalls, where all being placed, the eldest Knight maketh a second Reverence, which is followed to the youngest, and then all ascend into their Stalls, and take their accustomed Places, Service then beginneth, and is very solemnly celebrated, with singing of divers Anthems, and playing on the Organs, and when the time of their Offertory is come, the youngest Knights are summoned forth of their Stalls by the Heralds, doing Reverence, first within the Stalls, and again after they are descended, which is likewise imitated by all the rest; and being all thus come forth, and standing before their Stalls, as at first, the two eldest Knights with their Swords in their Hands are brought up by the Heralds to the Altar, where they offer their Swords, and the Dean receives them, of whom they presently redeem them with an Angel in Gold, and then come down to their former Places, whilst two others are led up in like manner, so doing successively, till the whole Ceremony be performed, which done, and Service ended, they depart in such Order as they came, with accustomed Reverence. At the Chapel Door, as they came forth, they were encountred by the King's Majesties Cook, who stood there with his white Apron and Sleeves, and a Chopping-Knife in his Hand, and challenged their Spurs, which were likewise redeemed with a Noble in Money, threatning them nevertheless, that if they should not be true and loyal to the King his Lord and Master, it must be his Office to hew them from their Heels. On *Monday* Morning, they all met together again at the Court, where in a private Room appointed for them, they were clothed in long Robes of Purple Satin, with Hoods of the same all lined, and edged about with white Taffata; and thus appavelled they gave their Attendance - - - at a Side-Board, as is already declared.

NUMB. LXXVII.

C. 15. p. 19. G. 2. p. 394. in my Custody.

At the Creation of the Prince of Wales. [3d June, 1610.]

The Lords and other Gentlemen appointed to receive the Order of the *Bath*, repaired to *Durham-house*, between two and three of the Clock in the Afternoon, to hear Evening-Prayer in the Chappel of the same House, to sup together, and after to prepare themselves unto Bathing.

The Bath is performed in the Night, where every Knight is to have his particular Tubb, and Attendants, a Bed with a Covering Tetter, or Canopy of red Say, without Curtines, and a Scutcheon of his Arms over his Bed's head; after their Bath, they betake themselves to rest, and early in the Morning are awaked with Musick, and being risen, are invested by their Esquires Governors in their Hermits Habit, and so preceded by their Esquires, downe the Stairs round about the Hall, and so up again into the Chapel of the said House to hear Morning-Prayer, the Musicians and Heralds going before them, the Esquires and Musicians stayed in the Fore-Chapel.

Service being ended, the Lords Commissioners appointed for that Purpose, did give them their Oaths, which done, and a Voydy prepared for them, they returned in the same manner as they came, to put off their Hermits Weeds, and were revested in Crimson Robes, white Hats, white Feathers, and white Boots, and so rid to the Court at *Whitehall*, to receive their Knighthood, in Manner as followeth.

First the Trumpets sounding, then the Heralds, every Knight's Page riding before his Master, bearing his Sword, the Pomel upwards, the Spurrs tyed to the Hilts, and on each Hand of the Knight, rideth an Esquire Governor well suited, and a Footman or two to attend their Horse.

At the Court-Gate they alight from their Horses, and are met with the Officers of Armes, and others appointed to conduct them to his Majesties Presence, to receive their Knighthood, as followeth;

The King's Majesty being sat in the Hall, accompanied with his greatest Lords, the chiefeft Lord, that is to receive the Order of Knighthood, is first presented unto his Majesty by the Lord Chamberlain, who taketh the Sword from the Page, and delivereth it to the King, who putteth it
about

about the neck of the Knight, as he kneeleth, and two of the Lords putt on his Spurr in the King's Prefence, and so are they knighted one after the other.

After which they returned, with the Trumpets, and Heralds before them to *Durrham-houfe* to dynner, every one having an Eschocheon of his Armes placed over his head, as he fitted, which is all on one side of the Table, but they must not eat, nor drink of that which is provyded for them.

Which Abstinence, or rather Pennance must be endured for *decorum* sake, with a modest and seemly carriage, The Musicians all the while playing before them. And after a convenient tyme of sitting, they arise, and goe into another Roome, leaving the Table furnished to the Esquires and Pages.

About four of the Clock in the Afternoon, they rid in like manner with their Esquires to Evening Prayer in the King's Chapell, their Pages following them. At the Court Gate, the Officers of Armes gave their attendance, as well to conduct, as to direct them in every thing, At entring into the Chapell the Heralds made their accustomed Reverence, the younger Knights following, doing the like, taking their Place before the lower Stalls, and so all the rest, and when the eldest be placed, they do with like reverence ascend to the upper Stalls in like manner, as at *St. George's Feast*.

Being placed in their Stalls Evening Prayer began, divers Anthems being sung, and the tyme of offertory come, *Mr. Garter* somoned them out of their Stalls, the youngest first, doing reverence first within the Stall, and the like after they are descended.

The eldest Knights are first brought up by the Heralds, bearing their Swords in their hands, the pomell upwards, and offered them to the Dean of the Chapell, and redeemed them presently again, with a piece of gould of x s. and then depart as they came.

At the Chapell Door standeth the Master Cook, with a chopping Knife, and a wooden block, challenging their Spurr, which they redeem with a Noble in money, threatning them, that if they be not loyal Knights to the King his Master, that he must hew their Spurr from their Heeles, and so they up on horseback at the Court Gate to *Durrham-houfe* again.

The next day they were appalled in Robes of Purple Satin with hoods, all lyned with white Taffata, to attend on the

the Prince at his Creation, which was in the Parlement-house, then kept in the Court of Requests. The King and the Prince came from *Whitehall* by water to the Parliament Stairs, But after the creation of the Prince, they returned all through *Westminster-hall* to the Bridge, and so to *Whitehall* again, where they dined, the Prince, and Noblemen at a long table in the middest of the Hall, and the new Knights of the *Bath* at a long table on the *West* side of the Hall, where they fate all on one side.

N U M B. LXXVIII.

Stow's Annals p. 899.

Wednesday the 30th of *May* 1610, the Prince rode to *Richmond*, and the next day by water to *Whitehall*— and there he was received by the Officers of the King's Household, in severall places according to their Offices— and the *Saturday* after [2 *June*] the Knights of the *Bath*, being in number 25, met at *Durrahm-houfe* between four and five of the Clock in the Afternoone, and proceeded from the great Chamber round about the Hall, not in any robes or habits that night, but in their ordinary apparell, the Heraulds going before them with their Coats upon their Armes, and then entred the Chapell of the said *Houfe*, and there every Knight took his Seat, the chiefest first, with solemn reverence placed, and then heard divine service, which being ended, they returned directly forth of the Chappell to the chamber, where they supped, sitting all on one side, and attended by Gentlemen-Ushers, and the Kings Guard, every Knights Scutcheon being placed over his head, as he sat that night at Supper, and after supper they withdrew themselves into the next room. where all their Bathes were prepared, every one having his severall Tubb lined within and without, with white linnen cloth, and covered on the top with red Say, and a ticket of every mans name set upon his Tub very orderly, and when they were bathed, there were beds set up in the roome, where they had supped for every man, *viz.* a Pallet with a Canopy with an Escutcheon of his Armes, placed there as he sat at supper. the next Morning being *Saterday*, about seven of the clocke, they were all ready in their Heremitical weeds, *viz.* each Knight in his Gray Gowne, girded unto him with a rufflet silke girdle, and an handkerchief hanging thereat, and a linnen coyfe upon his head, and upon that, his hood of gray suitable to his gowne;
with

with a pair of Cloth Stockings, soled with white leather, called Chafhambles, and being thus apparelled they went forward, the younger Knights marching first, and went round about the Hall of the said House in like manner, as they had done the night before; The King's Musicians, with their wind Instruments, and the Heralds invested in their Coats of Arms, going before them, and so came up again to the Chapell, and took their Seats, as they did the night before, with their accustomed Reverences, where divine Service being ended, they took their Oaths, the which was ministred unto them by the Lord *Chamberlain* and the Earl of *Worcester*, the eldest Knights first, and so unto the last, the manner whereof was thus, First the two oldest Knights made their reverence within their Stalls, and being come forth, made the like reverence again, and stood before their Stalls, one against another; and so two by two orderly, untill they were all come forth, and stood before their Stalls, then *Clarencieux* and *Norroy* went down, and made their reverence to the Altar, and brought up the two first Knights to the Altar, where the Commitioners aforesaid fate to give them their Oaths, which being done, they returned down as they came, and took their places before their Stalls, as they did before, then the two eldest Heralds conducted the two next Knights in like manner, and so by course and turns, untill they all received their Oaths, the forme of which Oath followeth,

Right dere Brother, great worship be this Order unto you, and the Almighty God give you the praying of all Knight-hood. You shall honour God above all things, You shall be stedfast in the Faith of Christ, and the same maintain and defend to your power, You shall love your Sovereign above all earthly creatures, And for your Sovereign, and your Sovereigns Right and Dignity live and dy, You shall defend Widows, Maydens, and Orphans in their right, you shall suffer no extortion as far forth as you may, nor sit in any place, where any wrongfull Judgement shall be given to your knowledge, and as great honor be this noble Order unto you, as ever it was to any your Progenitors.

This Oath being given, and the Lords departed, the Knights standing still before their Stalls, were presented with a banquet of wine, and divers delicate sweet meats, and after the same, they resorted to the Chamber, where they had been bathed
the

the night before, and there putt off their Hermetical Habits, and invested themselves in their Crimfon Taffata Robes, which was in this manner; first a Surcoat of Crimfon Taffata, lined with white sarcenet girt unto them, and over that a long robe of like Crimfon Taffata edged with white, having Cardowes [Gordons] of white Silke, with Tassells of the same, at which Cardowes were tyed a pair of white leather gloves, their hatts, boots, and feathers were white also, and so they took their horses in *Durrham-houfe* Yard about tenn of the clock, being furnished with black leather Saddles, garnished with white crosses over their horses foreheads and peurells [Pectorals] and so rode unto the Court, every one betwixt his two Esquires, and his Page before him bearing his sword, the hilt upwards, with his guilt spurrs hanging thereon, the Heralds riding before them, and the Trumpeters sounding all the way to the Court Gate, where they all alighted, and went on foot in such sort as they came on horseback, *viz.* the chiefeft Knights first, where they attending the Kings coming. And his Majesty being come and placed under the cloth of Estate, he knighted them according to their Degrees, as followeth; the eldest Knight being led up by his two Esquires, and his Page before him, bearing his sword and spurrs, delivered them to the Lord *Chamberlain*, and the Lord *Chamberlain* presented them to the King, who put the belt about their necks, and the sword hanging bendwise, in which manner they were all one after another knighted, and one of their spurrs was put on their right heel by a great Lord, and the other Spurr by their Page, which being ended, they rode back again to *Durrham-houfe* in the same order as they came, but that the youngeft Knight rode foremost, and their Pages came behind them.

The Dinner was prepared in the roome, where they supped the night before, with every Knights Arms over his head as aforesaid, sitting all upon one side of the Table, yet did they neither eat nor drink of that which was there prepared for them, but having sate a convenient time in this gentle abstinence, they all arose, and withdrew themselves into another Roome, leaving their well furnished Table to the Pleasure of their Esquires and Pages, And after dinner, about four of the clock they rode again to the Court in like manner as they returned home in the morning, *viz.* the youngeft Knights first,

and

and his Page behind him, and so came to the Chapell, where with accustomed Reverences to God, and the King they entred, and ascended their Stalls, as they had formerly done in the morning at *Durrham-house*, and presently after the second lesson, the Musick of the Offertory being begun, the Knights with their usual Reverences came forth, and stood before their Stalls, where the Earl of *Oxford* (*Garret* going before him) first offered his sword at the Altar, the pommel upwards, and redeemed again for an Angel of Gold, and receiving a short Exhortation of the Dean, he returned before his Stall again, and then two other of the eldest Knights were brought up by two of the Kings of Arms, who in like manner offered their swords, and redeemed them, and returned, and so the rest, one after another, offered their sword, untill the youngest. The Words of the Deans Exhortations were these,

By the Oath, that you have taken this day, you shall use these swords to the Honour of God, and his Word, to the Defence of your King, and Country, and to the maintenance of Justice and Equity.

Evening Prayer being ended, there stood at the Chapell Door the King's Master Cook with his white Apron, and Sleeves, and Chopping-knife in his hand gilded about the Edge, and challenged their spurrs, which they redeemed with a Noble a peice; and he said to every Knight, as they passed by him,

Sir Knight, look, that you be true and loyal to the King my Master, or else I must hew these spurrs from your Heels.

And so they marched through the Hall into the Court Yard, and at the Gate took their Horses, and returned to *Durrham-house* in the same Order as they came, the Trumpets sounding, the Heralds still attending them, till they came there; and then every Knight alighted, and put off his Robes, and then every one went privily to his own lodging; for that night they had no Supper there provided.

The next morning, about eight of the Clock, they mett all in the Queens Closet, where they put on long purple satin robes lined with white Taffata without any Cardowes, and about their Necks, a hood like a Batchelor of Law, edged about with Taffata, being then ready to attend the Prince unto his Creation, but for want of good and true Direction, the Prince (who should have gone in a Barge by himself, and these Knights in another before him) went with the King in

his Barge; And the Knights of the *Bath* staid behind, untill they were sent for, and being landed at *Westminster Palace-Bridge*, they were met at the Hall-Gate by the Heralds only, and so conducted up to the Door of the Court of Wards, where the Prince was to proceed to his Creation, and they went in next before the Lords, that were employed in several services at the said Creation, and the Heralds before them, and proceeded into the Parliament-Chamber, where he was created in this manner following, the Lords performing their several Offices here underwritten. Master *Garter* bearing the Letters Patents &c. Then follows the Ceremony of Creation.

All which being ended, they returned down through *Westminster-hall*, to the *Palace-bridge* in this manner, first the Masters of the Chancery, and other Ministers of the Law *viz.* the King's Councill, and others, then the Officers of Arms, the Knights of the *Bath*, next after them the Judges, and after them the whole Parliament-house in order as the common proceeding is, the Barons, Vicounts, Earls, and Marquises having Coronets on their heads, Master *Norroy* and Master *Clarenceux* going next before the Lord Treasurer and the Lord Chancellor, and Master *Garter* next before the Sword, and so proceeded to the Stairs, where all took water, in several Barges, the Heralds and the Trumpets going in the Row-barge next before the Knights, and so landed at *Whitehall Bridge*, where the Officers of Arms, the Knights of the *Bath*, and Lords being first landed attended the King, And when the King and Prince were landed, they went all before him into the Hall, and so up into the great Chamber, from whence the Prince came down to Dinner into the Hall, where were two Tables set longways down the Hall, one of them stode in the middle, where the Prince himself sate at the upper end, accompanied with the Lords, that attended him in his Creation, and at the other Table on the left hand of the Prince, sate all the Knights of the *Bath* in their purple Robes all upon one side, where they were all royally feasted and attended by the Kings Servants.

NUMB. LXXIX.

Knights of the Bath, made at the Coronation of Charles Prince of Wales, at Whitehall 3 Nov. 1616.

James, Lord Matravers, eldest sonne to Thomas Earl of Arundell.

Algernon

Algernon Lord Percy, eldest sonne to the Earl of *Northumberland*.

James Lord Wriotbesley, eldest sonne to *Henry* the Earl of *Southampton*.

Theophilus Lord Clinton, after Earl of *Lincolne*, eldest sonne of *Thomas* Earl of *Lincolne*. [*Stow* calls him *Edward*]

Edward Seymor, Lord *Beauchampe*, Grandchild to *Edward* Earl of *Hertford*.

George Lord Barkeley.

Henry Lord Mordant, after Earl of *Peterborough*.

[*The Master of Fenton*] The Earl of *Marre* his eldest sonne, *Erskin* after Lord *Fenton*. [In G. 2. p. 381, Sir *Alexander Fenton* son and heir of the Earl of *Kelley*] Viscount *Fenton's* son, and so they use to ranke the eldest sonne in *Scotland*. Ibid. p. 389.

Sir *Henry Howard* second son to the Earl of *Arundel*, after Lord *Matravers*.

Sir *Robert Howard* fifth [third] sonne to *Thomas* Earl of *Suffolk*.

Sir *Edward Sackvill*, after Earl of *Dorset*.

Sir *William Howard* sixth [fourth] sonne to *Thomas* Earl of *Suffolk*.

Sir *Edward Howard* seventh [fifth] sonne to *Thomas* Earl of *Suffolk*, after Lord *Howard* of *Esricke* in *Yorkshire*.

Sir *William Seymer* second sonne to the Lord *Beauchampe*, after Earl of *Hartford*.

Sir *Mountague Bartie* sonne and heire to *Robert* [Lord *Willoughby*] Earl of *Lindsey*, after Lord *Willoughby*.

Sir *William Stourton* sonne [and heir] to the Lord *Stourton*.

Sir *William Parker* [son and heir of Lord *Montegle*] after Lord *Morley* and *Monteagle*. [*Stow* calls him *Henry*.]

Sir *Dudley North* [son and heir of the Lord *North*] after Lord *North*.

Sir *William Spencer* [son and heir of the Lord *Spencer*] after Lord *Spencer*.

Sir *Spencer Compton* [son and heir of the Lord *Compton*] after Earl of *Northampton*.

Sir *Rowland St. John*, Brother to *Oliver* Earl of *Bullinbrook*.

Sir *John Cavendish* second sonne to *William* Earl of *Devonshire*.

Sir *Thomas Nevil* sonne to *Henry* Lord *Abergavenny*.

Sir *John Roper* [son and heir of the Lord *Tenham*] after Lord *Tenham*.

Sir *John North* Brother to *Dudley Lord North*.

Sir *Henry Carey*, after Viscount *Faulkland*.

Number 25. See *Stow's Ann.* p. 1026.

G. 2. *penes me* p. 400 b.

Saterday the 2 *November* they went to Evening Prayer, from the Parliament-house to the Chapell of King *Henry 7*, and after returned to the said Parliament-house, where they kept their Bath. *Sunday* the 3d of *November*, they were awaked with Musick, and went in their Hermits weeds to the Chapell aforesaid, where, after that Morning Prayer was ended, they had their Oaths given them in the Chapell, by the Earl of *Arundell* then for that time Earl Marshal, and the Earle of *Pembroke* Lord Chamberlain, and then returned with their Musick, and Heralds to the Parliament-house again, where they put off their Hermits weeds, and were revested in Robes of Crimson Taffeta, white Hatts, Feathers, and Boots. In the Afternoon they ridd with their Esquires and the Heralds to *Whitehall*, to receive the Knighthood, and then returned, riding to the Parliament-house again, and presently to *Whitehall* again to Evening Prayer, they offered up their Swords, and so returned. *Munday* 4 *Nov.* they were in Robes of Purple Satin to attend on the Prince, who was created at *Whitehall* in the Great-Hall.

NUMB. LXXX.

Knights of the Bath, made at the Coronation of King Charles 1, February 1625.

George Fielding, Viscount *Callon*, second sonne to *William Earle of Denbigh*, after Earle of *Desmond*.

James Stanlye, Lord *Strange*, eldest sonne to *William Earle of Derby*.

Charles Cecill, Lord *Cranborn*, eldest sonne to *William Earle of Salisbury*.

Charles Herbert, Lord *Herbert of Shurland*, eldest son to *Philip Earle of Montgomery*.

Robert Rich, Lord *Rich*, eldest son to *Robert Earle of Warwick*.

James Hay, Lord *Hay*, eldest son to *James Earle of Carlile*.

Bazel

Bazell Fielding, eldest son to *William Earle of Denbigh*.

Oliver St. John, Lord *St. John*, eldest son to *Oliver Earle of Bullingbrooke*.

Mildmay Fane, Lord *Burgherſt*, eldest son of the Earle of *Westmerland*.

Lord *Henry Pawlet*, younger son to *William Marquess of Winchester*.

Sir *Edward Montagu*, eldest son to *Henry Viſcount Mandevill*, after Earle of *Mancheſter*.

Sir *John Cary*, eldest son to *Henry Viſcount Rochford*, after Earle of *Dover*.

Sir *Charles Howard*, eldest son to *Thomas Viſcount Andover*, after Earle of *Barkſhire*.

Sir *William Howard*, second son to *Thomas Earle of Arundell*.

Sir *Robert Stanley*, second son to *William Earl of Derby*.

Sir *Pawlet St. John*, second son to *Oliver Earle of Bullingbrooke*.

Sir *Francis Fane*, second son to *Francis Earle of Westmerland*.

Sir *James Howard*, eldest son to *Theophilus Lord Walden*, after Earle of *Suffolk*.

Sir *William Cavendiſh*, eldest son to *William Lord Cavendiſh*, Earle of *Devonſhire*.

Sir *Thomas Wentworth*, eldest son to *Thomas Lord Wentworth*, after Earle of *Cleveland*.

Sir *William Paget*, son to *William Lord Paget*, of *Bewdeſert*, after Lord *Paget*.

Sir *William Ruſſell*, eldest son to *Francis Lord Ruſſell*, after Earle of *Bedford*.

Sir *Henry Stanhope*, eldest son to *Philip Lord Stanhope of Shelſord*, after Earle of *Cheſterfield*.

Sir *Richard Vaughan*, eldest son to *John Lord Vaughan of Molengar* in *Ireland*.

Sir *Chriſtopher Nevill*, second son to *Edward Lord Abergavenny*.

Sir *Roger Bartie*, second son to *Robert Lord Willoughby*, after Earle of *Lynſey*.

Sir *Thomas Wharton*, second son to *Thomas Lord Wharton*.

Sir *Saint John Blunt*, brother to *Mountjoy Blunt*, Lord *Mountjoy*, after Earl of *Newport*.

[All theſe ſat at one Table on the one ſide.]

Sir

These are the
King's Ser-
vants of the
Privy-Cham-
ber.

Sir *Ralph Clare* of *Worcestershire*.
 Sir *John Maynard* of *Essex*, second brother to
 the Lord *Maynard*.
 Sir *Francis Carew* of *Devonshire*. qu. if not *Cary*.
 Sir *John Byron* of *Nottinghamshire*.
 Sir *Roger Palmer* of *Suffex*, Master of the King's
 Household.

Sir *Henry Edmonds*, son to Sir *Thomas Edmonds*, Treasurer
 of the Household.

Sir *Ralph Hopton* of *Somersetshire*.

Sir *William Brooke* of *Kent*.

Sir *Alexander Ratcliffe* of *Lancashire*.

Sir *Edward Scot* of *Kent*.

Sir *Christopher Hatton* of *Northamptonshire*.

Sir *Thomas Sackvill* of *Suffex*.

Sir *John Munson* of *Lincolneshire*, son to Sir *Thomas Mun-
 son*.

Sir *Peter Wentworth* of *Oxfordshire*.

Sir *John Buttler* of *Hartfordshire*.

Sir *Edward Hungerford* of *Wiltshire*.

Sir *Richard Lewson* of *Kent*.

Sir *Nathaniel Bacon* of *Calford* in *Suffolke*.

Sir *Robert Poyntz* of *Gloucestershire*.

Sir *Robert Bevill* of *Huntingtonshire*.

Sir *George Sands* of *Kent*.

Sir *Thomas Smith* of *Weston-Hanger* in *Kent*.

Sir *Thomas Fanshaw* of *Warparke* in *Hartfordshire*.

Sir *Miles Hobard* of *Plomsted* in *Norfolke*.

Sir *Henry Hart* of *Kent*, son to Sir *Percivall Hart*.

Sir *Francis Carew*, alias *Throgmorton*, of *Bedington* in *Surrey*.

Sir *John Backhouse* [*Baccus*] of *Berkshire*.

Sir *Matthew Monins* of *Kent*.

Sir *John Stowell* of *Somersetshire*.

Sir *John Fennings* of *Hartfordshire*.

Sir *Stephen Harvey* of *Northamptonshire*, son to Judge *Harvey*.

Pat. 1 Car. p. 5. n. 6. King *Charles*, on 30th *January*, Com-
 missions the Earls of *Arundell* and *Pembroke* to exercise every
 thing for the full making of Knights of the *Bath*.

NUMB. LXXXI.

His Majesty hath commanded me to let his Will and Pleasure be knowne, that all the Knights of the *Bath*, aswell those made by the Kinge his Father of glorious memory in any time of his reigne, as those by himself at his Royal Coronation, shall contynually weare the Ensigne of that Order about their necks, as a marke of Honour. And that they may not want any due unto them, I am to publish that Knights of the *Bath* and their Wyves are of right (without question) to have precedency before all Knight *Batchelors*, and their Wives.

Whiteball, 4 *Febr.* 1625.

T. *Arundell* & *Surrey*,
Earle Marshal of *England*.

NUMB. LXXXII.

G. 2. *penes me*, p. 383.

Tuesday 13 February, 1637.

The time his Majesty hath appointed for the Prince his Son to receive the Orders of the Bath, and of the Garter, with his Installation at Windsor.

On *Monday* the next day after *Trinity-Sunday*, being the 21 of *May* next, the Prince his Highnes, with other Knights of the *Bath*, that shall be appointed to attend him, are to beginne in the Evening the Ceremonies belonging to the Knights of the *Bath*, at the King's ould Palace at *Westminster*. His Highnesse with them resting that Night in the Parliament Rooms, and other Rooms adjoining, which are to be prepared accordingly.

The next Morning, being *Tuesday*, his Highnesse, with the rest, having heard *Mattins*, and received their Oaths in the King's Chappell Royall of *Hen. VII.* at *Westminster*, after changing his Roabs with the rest of the Knights, is to come on horsebacke to *Whiteball*, and there that Morning receive Knighthood, and immediately after to offer in the Chapell there, at which time His Majesty (it being Sermon Day) may see the Ceremony, and then to returne on horsebacke to dinner, and so disperse there at *Westminster*.

On *Wednesday*, being the day, to which his Majestie for this Yeare is pleased to adjourne the day of *St. George's* Feast, all the Knights of the *Bath* early in the Morning are to come on horsebacke in their Purple Robes together, from
some

some Place which shall be appointed, to attend his Highness all that day, who will be there in his purple Robes to honour the King his Father's Feast, at the Evening of which day, the Scrutiny for Election is to pass according to Custom.

On *Thursday* Morning his Majesty will invest the Prince with the Ensigns of the Order, at which tyme the Knights of the *Bath* are to attend his Highness to Chapell, where some Provision to be made for their conveniency toward the Altar.

On *Friday* Morning his Highness is to goe towards *Windsore*, beginning his Journey from *Somerset-House*, and to be accompanied with all the Knights of the Order of the *Garter*, and all their severall Retinues (of which all the Knights of the Order are to take most particular Notice) as also with all the Knights of the *Bath* attending with their Robes in the Proceedings; and so at *Windsor*, where their Majesties are pleased to declare, themselves will be present to honour the Feast of his Highness's Installation on *Saturday* the next day following.

Arundell and Surrey.

NUMB. LXXXIII.

Registrum Nobilissimi Ordinis a Garterio Denominati.

Anno Dom. 1638. Caroli anno xiiii.

Maij xxi^o—Juventutis Principem *Carolum* jam octennem, sed virtutibus longius multo quam ætate proVectum, Supremus in augustum ordinem cooptat, electoq; id (rescripto suo ad Regem Armorum dato) nunciari iussit. Præstolantem vero beneplacitum Supremi, ex aula Sangeorgiana bini Primores Ordines, Comes scilicet *Pembrochia* & *Montgomeria*, Comesq; *Arundelia* & *Surria*, medium deducunt, antecedente nigra-virgæ-gerulo. Accedentem (non sine debita veneratione ad thronum Supremi) exultans plenis affectibus excipit augustus Pater, statimq; Periscelide—lævam cingit Tibiam, repetente Cancellario priscam formulam—Principi ad hunc modum recepto, gratulabantur sigillatim omnes Commilitones; moxq; ad Cameram Præsentiæ regreffi, dictos binos Primores rogant, ut Principem reliquorum nomine Supremo præsentarent, Equitis Baccalaurei titulo, & ritibus (ut leges jubent) primo initiandum; Primus enim ille apud *Britannos* dignitatis omnis militaris gradus est, Honorum omnium in Republica basis; adco

adeo ut nulli ex gente *Britannica* (quantacunq; alias polleat sanguinis aut virtutum præcellentia) fas sit in honoratissimam societatem cooptari, nisi quem prius iste militaris honoris gradus habilem reddiderit & capacem. Primum itaq; solenni more Princeps genibus innixus a Supremo creatur Eques Auratus, & in augmentum Honoris ex nobilibus evocati quatuor, quos similibus auspiciis Supremus in spem majoris gratiæ sublevavit. Horum primus Comes *Essexiæ*, dominis *Frederico Hamilton* & *Roberto Honnywoode* militibus stipatus ad folium Supremi procumbit creandus; Hunc sequutus est Comes *Sti. Albani*, quem dexterâ Dom. *Rogerus Palmer* Eques Balneatus Regi ab arculis, sinistrâ dominus *Henricus Mildmay* gemmarij regij Custos comitabantur; Dein Comiti de *Elgin* parastatæ erant dom. *Foannes Meldrum* & dom. *Foannes Witherington*. Quarto loco Dominus Vicecomes *Grandison* medius iit inter Dom. *Foannem Harper*, & Dom. *Foannem Lucas*.

NUMB. LXXXIV.

The Narrative of the Coronation of King Charles II. by Sir Edward Walker, Garter. MS. in Off. Arm.

To this great and splendid Solemnity, succeeded that of making Knights of the *Bath*, an Order, wherewith the Kings of *England* usually some Days before their Coronations dignified the Sonnes of their Nobility, and other eminent Gentry of this Kingdom; To which end, by his Majesties Command, the Lord Chamberlain of his Majesties Household (in the Vacancy of an Earle Marshal) wrot Letters unto every one of them designed for that Dignity, requiring their Attendance upon *Thursday* the 18th of *April*, in the Palace at *Westminster*, there to be called, and begin that Ceremony; the Copy of which Letter is as followeth,

After my hearty commendations to your Lordship; whereas his Majesty hath appointed the 23d day of Aprill next for his solempne coronation at Westminster, and the day before to proceed publicquely through the City of London to his Palace at Whitehall: And according to the antient custome used by his royall Predecessours, his Majesty is graciously pleased to advance certain of his nobility, and principal gentry into the honourable Order of the Bath, to attend him in those great solempnities, and (amongst others) hath vouchsafed to nominate

you to be one of that number. These are therefore to will and require you, in his Majestyes name, to make your appearance at his Majesty's Palace at Westminster upon thursday in the afternoon, being the 18th of Aprill next, furnished, and appointed, as in such cases appertaineth, there to begin the usuall ceremony, and the next day to receive the said Order of Knight-hood of the Bath from his Majesty's hands, hereof you are not to fail; and so I bid your Lordship heartily farewell.

Your Lordship's very affectionate friend.

Hereupon sixty eight (whereof some were sons of the nobility) with Baronetts and Esquires, appeared in the Court of Requests, and being called by an Herauld, answered to their names, as they were all Ranked that morning by the Duke of Ormond, then Lord Steward, (and after Lord High Steward of England for the Coronation) the Earle of *Lindsey* Lord Greate Chamberlaine of England, the Earle of *Northumberland* Lord High Constable, and the Earle of *Suffolk* Earle Marshall (who that morning received their commissions and staves of office from his Majesty) their authority being thereby to continue unto the night after the Coronation) and by the Earle of *Manchester* Lord Chamberlaine of his Majestyes Household whose names are as followeth, viz.

Edward Lord *Clinton*, Grandchild to the Earle of *Lincolne*.

John Lord *Brackley*, eldest son to the Earle of *Bridgewater*.

Philip *Herbert*, second son to the Earle of *Pembrooke*.

William *Egerton*, second son to the Earle of *Bridgewater*.

Vere *Vane*, second son to the Earle of *Westmerland*.

Charles *Berkeley*, eldest son to the Lord *Berkeley*.

Henry *Bellasis*, eldest son to the Lord *Bellasis*.

Henry *Hyde*, eldest son to the Lord *Hyde*, Lord Chancellour.

Roland *Bellasis*, Brother to Viscount *Fauconbridge*.

Henry *Capell*, son to the late Lord *Capell*.

John *Vaughan*, second son to the Lord *Vaughan*, Earle of *Carbery*.

Charles *Stanlye*, Grandchild to the Earle of *Darby*.

Francis *Fane*,
Henry *Fane*, } Grandchildren to the late Earle of *Westmerland*.

Sir *William* *Portman*, Baronett.

Sir *Richard* *Temple*, Bart.

Sir

Sir *William Duce*, Bart.
 Sir *Thomas Trevor*, Bart.
 Sir *John Scudamore*, Bart.
 Sir *William Gardiner*, Bart.
Charles Cornwallis, son to Sir *Frederick Cornwallis*.
John Nicholas, son to Sir *Edward Nicholas* Principal Secretary of State.

John Monson.
Bourchier Wray.
John Coventry.
Edward Hungerford.
John Knevet.
Philip Butler.
Adrian Scrope.
Richard Knightley.
Henry Heron.
John Lewkenor.
George Browne.
William Terringham.
Francis Godolphin.
Edward Baynton.
Grevill Verney.
Edward Harley.
Edward Walpole.
Francis Popham.
Edward Wise.
Christopher Calthrop.
Richard Edgcome.
William Bromley.
Thomas Bridges.

Thomas Fanshaw.
John Denham.
Nicholas Bacon.
James Altham.
Thomas Wendy.
John Brampton.
George Freeman.
Nicholas Slanings.
Richard Ingoldsby.
John Rolles.
Edward Heath.
William Morley.
John Bennet.
Hugh Smith.
Simon Leech.
Henry Chester.
Robert Atkins.
Robert Gayre.
Richard Powle.
Hugh Duce.
Stephen Hales.
Ralph Basb.
Thomas Whitmore.

Whence being called in order by the Officers of Arms, (with their coats upon their arms) between their two Esquires, and Pages behind them, they proceed in their ordinary Habits to King *Henry* the 7th's Chapell, where they heard Evening-song; at their return they reposed themselves in the *Painted Chamber*, and *Lords House of Parliament*, *Prince's Lodging*, and *Lobby*; where their lodgings were prepared, and Supper being made ready for them in the *Court of Requests*, they were set at convenient distance each from other, under the several Escutcheons of their Arms, their Esquires

and Pages standing on the other side of the Table to attend them; after Supper the Treasurer, and Comptroller of his Majestyes Household (the supper, and next day dinner being provided at his Majestyes Charge) at the upper end of the roome wellcomed them from the King, and conducted them to their Lodgings, where they were lodged in Palletts covered with red say, each having a demitefter without courtins of the same stufte, and an Escoccheon of arms on every tetter; at the foot of every pallit (which were set at equal distance from each other, both in the *Painted Chamber*, and the *Lords house*) was a Bathing-Tubb covered without with twenty or four and twenty Ells of fine Linnen, with a crosse hoope over it, covered with red Say, and a carpett at the side of it. The Rooms being voyded, each Bathed himself more or less, as he thought fitt, and so went to rest.

Early the next morning all sorts of musick with drums and trumpetts bid them good morrow, being risen, they apparelled themselves in Cordeliers, or Hermitts habits, and so between their two Esquires, and their Pages after them, and the Officers of Arms in their coats before them, they proceeded to *Henry* the 7th's Chappell, where being disposed in order (the seats being not sufficient to hold them) they stood before the Stalls against their Arms placed therein: Then the Duke of *Ormond* Lord Steward, the Earl of *Lindsey* Lord Great Chamberlain, the Earle of *Northumberland*, Lord High Constable, the Earle of *Suffolke* Earle Marshall, and the Earle of *Manchester* Lord Chamberlaine, by virtue of his Majestyes commission, the copy whereof is as followeth, (*Garter* principall king of Arms in his coat of arms preceeding them) came into the Quier, and sat down on five chairs before the Altar.

Charles the Second by the Grace of God King of *England*, *Scotland*, *France*, and *Ireland*, Defender of the Faith, &c. To all, to whom these Presents shall come greeting: Whereas we minding, and intending very shortly by the Grace of God to proceed to the Solemnity of our Coronation, in such sort, and manner, as in the Coronation of our Progenitors, and Predecessors hath been accustomed, and as to our State and Dignity Royal apperteineth, have, for the more Adornment of the said Solemnity, and for the Nobility of Blood, good Service,
and

and other good Qualities of many of our Servants, and other good Subjects, resolved to call certain of them to the Order, and Dignity of Knights of the *Bath*; Know yee therefore, that we, for the espetiall Trust and Confidence, which we have reposed in our Right Trusty, and right wellbeloved Cousins, and Counsellors *James* Duke of *Ormond* Lord Steward, *Montagu* Earle of *Lindsey*, Lord great Chamberlaine of *England*, *Algernon* Earle of *Northumberland*, Lord high Constable, *James* Earle of *Suffolk*, Earle Marshall, and *Edward* Earle of *Manchester*, Lord Chamberlaine of our household, have assigned, nominated and appointed, and by these presents doe assign, nominate, appoint, and authorise the said *James* Duke of *Ormond*, *Montague* Earle of *Lindsey*, *Algernon* Earle of *Northumberland*, *James* Earle of *Suffolk*, and *Edward* Earle of *Manchester*, for us, and in our name, and by our authority, to doe, and exercise every thing, and things on our behalf, to be done and exercised for the full making of the Knights of the *Bath*, whom we intend specially to call for that Purpose, and shall particularly nominate under our royall hand, and signature: And our further pleasure is, that every person so to be advanced and made Knight of the *Bath*, and established by the Rights and Ceremonies thereof, performed by our said commissioners, shall have, hold, and enjoy the said order of Knighthood of the *Bath*, with the name, title, and dignity, and all prerogatives thereunto belonging, in as large, and ample manner, as any other Knight or Knights of like degree, made in the time of any of our Progenitors, have, and of right ought to have and enjoyed. In witness, &c. Teste &c.
17 Aprilis 13 R. Caroli secundi.

Then the Officers of arms brought them up, six at a time, the seniors first, and having made three Reverences, *Garter* read the ensueing Oath, or admonition, and *Norroy* held the book, and gave it them to kiss.

Right dear Brethren, Great worship be this noble Order unto every of you. You shall love and dread God above all things, You shall be stedfast in the Faith of Christ, You shall love the King your Sovereign Lord, and him, and his right defend to your power, You shall defend Widows, Maydens, and Orphans in their right, you shall suffer no extortion,

as

as far as you may, nor sit in a place, where any wrongfull Judgement shall be given to your knowledge, and of as great honor be this Order unto you, as ever it was to any of your kinne, progenitors, or others.

All which done the Lords Commissioners retired, *Garter* attending them, and service being ended, the designed Knights returned whence they came, and there devested themselves of their Hermits habits, and being apparelled in white Sattin suits, they put on their surcoats of Crimofin Taffata lined with white, and their Mantles of the same, haveing Cordons of white filk and knopps of red filk and Gold, whereunto white gloves were tyed, as also white Boots, and white hatts and feathers, in this habitt they dined; after dinner they took horse, and with drumms, trumpetts, and heraulds before them, each in his seniority between his two Esquires, and his page well mounted before him, carrying his sword and belt, the ponnell upwards, with his spurrs hanging on the hilt, they proceeded into the new Palace-yard, and having ridden round about it, and through *King-street*, they passed by *Whitehall* surrounding the place, where *Charing-crofs* lately stood; then they returned, and alighted at *Whitehall Gate*, where they ought to have been received by the Treasurer, and Comptroller of the house, and were by *Garter*, and the two provincially Kings of Arms, thence making a tour about the court, they passed up the staires to the Banqueting-house, where his Majesty sat under the Cloth of Estate.

In coming up, they made three obeysances, and six of them being brought up together, neare the State (to shorten the time) the page of the eldest Knight upon his Knee delivered the Sword, Belt, and the Spurrs to the Lord *Chamberlaine*, and he to the King, then the Knight kneeling between his two Esquires, was knighted with the Sword of State; then the King hung the Knights own Sword about his neck, and after that, the Riband with the order; then the Knight arose, and put his right foot upon the degrees of the State, and the Earle of *Lincoln* (by his Majesty's appointment) touched the heele of the Knight, with a Spurr; for had every Knights Spurrs been putt on, it would have taken up many hours time, this done, the Knight withdrew, and the second person was called by *Garter* according to the list, and knighted as the former,

former, and so the first six, then the two officers of Arms conducted six more, who in the like manner were knighted, and so all the rest.

Which done, the Knights being put in order, the youngest foremost, between his Esquires, and his page behind him, they proceeded to the Chappell, and there entered two and two making reverences, but because the Chappell was not capacious enough, they all stood before the Stalls, and after solemne service, and anthems, the six eldest were brought up by the Heraulds, and offered their Swords, the Bishop of *London* Dean of the Chappell receiving them, and laying them on the altar, and then gave them this admonition.

By the Oath, which you have taken this day, I exhort and admonish you to use these Swords to the Glory of God, and defence of the Gospell, to the maintainance of your Sovereigns right, and honour, and to the upholding of Justice, and equity to your power, so help you God.

Which done, they redeemed their Swords with an Angell in gold, and returned before their Stalles, and stayed untill all of them had done the same; at the chappell dore the Kings Master Cooke with a white apron, and Chopping-knife in his hand, having a little table before him covered with a linnen Cloath, as they passed by, said thus unto them.

Gentlemen, you know, what a great Oath you have taken, which is to defend the Gospell, succor the widows, and fatherless, right the wronged &c. which if you performe, and keep, it will be to your great honour, but if you break it I must hack off your Spurrs from your Heeles, as unworthy of this dignity, which will be a great dishonour to you, which God forbid.

Then all of them staying in the Hall, an officer of Arms declared unto them, that they were upon *Monday* following to be upon *Tower-hill*, by eight in the Morning, thence to proceed in their order, through *London* to *Whitehall* in the same habitts they then were knighted in, and that their Esquires had a place appointed for them in the proceeding; that upon *Tuesday* the day of his Majesty's coronation, they were in their purple Robes to attend by eight of the clock in the morning, in the court of Requests, and thence to proceed to the *Abby-Church*, where there was a place appointed

for

for them to sitt and see the solemnity of his Majesty's coronation, and so every one of them returned to his lodging.

NUMB. LXXXV.

Ad celebritatis famam oris remotioribus divulgandam, in *Alemanniam & Angliam* longe lateque per Regnum cursores Regii diriguntur & nuncii, qui utriusque sexus ingenuitatem oraculo vivæ vocis & apicibus invitarent ad solemnitatem in villa Sancti *Dionysii* prope *Parisius* peragendam.

Prima die mensis *Maii*, quæ fuit dies *Sabbathi*, sole jam suos delectabiles radios abscondente, Rex ad locum deditum solemnitati accessit. Quem modico temporis spatio interjecto, Regina *Siciliæ* secuta est. In curru de *Parisi* exivit cum Ducum, militum & Baronum multitudine copiosa, quam etiam duo ejusdem filii *Ludovicus* Rex *Siciliæ* & *Carolus* adolescententes egregii, equestres sine medio sequebantur, non tamen simili apparatu, quo prius soliti erant equitare. Nam scutiferorum prisorum ceremonias gradatim ad tyronum ordinem ascendentium servantes, tunica lata talarî ex griseo bene fusco uterque indutus erat. Quicquid vero ornamenti eorum equi vel ipsimet deferebant, auro penitus carebat. Ex simili quoque panno quo ambo induti erant, quasdam portiunculas complicatas ac sellis equorum a tergo alligatas deferebant, ut armigerorum antiquorum peregre proficiscentium speciem denotarent. In hoc statu cum matrem usque ad Sanctum *Dionysium* conduxissent, in secretioribus locis nudi in præparatis balneis se mundarunt. Quo peracto, circa noctis initium ad Regem redeunt salutandum, a quo benigne suscepti sunt, & tunc ad Ecclesiam festinans, eo sequi se præcepit modo qui sequitur. Indumentis prædictis exuti, mox vestimentis novæ militiæ adornantur. Ex oloferico rubino vestimenta duplicia minutis variis foderata deferebant, unum de subtus rotundum ad talos usque protensum, alterum ad modum Imperialis chlamydis a scapulis ad terram dependentis. Quo habitu distincti, & absque caputiis ad Ecclesiam sunt adducti. Insignium virorum comitiva præibat & sequebatur. Domini Duces *Burgundiæ & Turoniæ* ad lævam & ad dexteram *Ludovicum* Regem *Siciliæ* deducebant, Dux etiam *Borboniensis* & Dominus *Petrus* de *Navarra Carolum* deducebant. Et hi omnes cum Rege ante martyrum corpora sacrosancta, per-

acta

acta oratione, cum pompa qua venerant, coenaturi in aulam Regiam redierunt. Tunc in mensa Regis, Regina *Sicilia*, Duces *Burgundia* & *Turonis* ac Rex *Armenia* sedem superiorem tenuerunt. Ad laevam Rex *Sicilia* & frater ejus *Carolus* confederunt. Celebrique cœna facta, omnibus Rex valedicens, ad quiescendum perrexit. Insignes vero adolescentes prædicti, habitu eodem quo prius, ante martyres reducuntur, ut ibidem, sicut mos antiquitus inolevit, in Orationibus pernoctarent. Sed quia tenera ætas amborum tanto labori minime correspondebat, ibi modica mora facta reducuntur, ut quieti indulgerent.

Illucescente aurora, futurorum militum ductores prænominati ad Ecclesiam accedentes, adolescentes Regios prostratos ante pignora martyrum sacrosancta repererunt, quos ad domum reducentes, expectare missarum solemniam præceperunt. Hæc *Antiochodorensis* Episcopus cum conventu monasterii celebranda susceperat, ut novæ militiæ insignia sanctius conferrentur. Ad quod etiam decentius peragendum, Rex brevi nobilium vallatus multitudine ad Ecclesiam pervenit. Duo armigeri corporis ejus custodes præcipui, evaginatoes enses per cuspidem deferentes, in quorum summitate aurea calcaria dependebant, per claustrum portam Ecclesiam sunt ingressi, quos Rex longo & Regali epitogio indutus, ac postmodum Rex *Sicilia* cum fratre, ordine quo prius, sequebantur. Qui cum ad altare martyrum pervenissent, ac ibidem Reginas *Francia* & *Sicilia* ac cæterarum Dominarum insigne contubernium expectassent, jubente Rege missa solemnitas inchoatur. Hoc peracto, Episcopus protinus Regem adiit, & in ejus præsentia ambo adolescentes flexis genibus petierunt ut tyronum adscriberentur numero, qui cum ab eis juramentum solitum exegisset, eos noviter accinxit baltheo militari, & per Dominum de *Chaviniaco* calcaribus deauratis eos jussit Rex *Carolus* insigniri. In hoc statu, prius tamen ab Episcopo benedictione percepta, in aulam Regiam reducuntur, ubi cum Rege prandium & cœnam acceperunt, utriusque sexus evocata nobilitate assistente, quæ ineffabiliter congaudens, tripudiando pernoctavit.

Die Luna subsequente, circa diei horam nonam, sicut conditum fuerat, Rex viginti duobus electis militibus spectatæ strenuitatis indici jussit hastiludiorum spectaculum ut cum quanto apparatu possent & scirent, illud redderent gloriosum.

Quod & peragere maturarunt. Nam mox in equis cristatis, auro fulgentibus armis, & scutis viridibus insignitis, quos etiam sequebantur qui lanceas & galeas solemniter vectabant, ad Regem pervenerunt & ibidem insignem catervam Dominarum quæ ipsorum ductrices existerent, dignum duxerunt aliquamdiu præstolari. Eæ jussu Regis ad numerum militum præelectæ, vestimentis similibus ex viridi valde fusco cum fertis aureis ac gemmatis, cultu Regio phaleratis infedentes ad ejus præsentiam adducuntur. Et sicut instructæ fuerant, de sinu suo funiculos sericos extrahentes, dulciter prædictis militibus porrexerunt, & eorum sinistris lateribus adhæferunt, cum lituis & instrumentis musicis eos usque ad campum agonistarum deducentes. Ardor inde Martius militum animos incitavit ut repetitione ictuum lancearum usque ad Solis occasum, laudis & probitatis titulos mererentur. Tum Dominæ, quarum ex arbitrio sententia bravii dependebat, nominarunt quos honorandos & præmiandos singulariter censuerunt. Quarum sententiam gratanter Rex audiens, & ipsam munificentia solita cupiens adimplere, præfatos viros egregios pro qualitate meritorum donis dotavit ingentibus. Et inde cœna peracta, quod reliquum noctis fuit, tripudiando transactum est.

Militari tyrocinio peracto, sequens dies ad similia exercenda viginti duobus electis scutiferis assignatur & pari pompa ut prius a totidem Domicellis in campum ducti fuerunt, ubi alternatis ictibus mutuo usque ad noctem conflixerunt. Cœnaque laute Regio more est peracta, cum Dominæ nominassent quos super cæteros elegerant præmiandos.

Quia exercitium illud militare Rex per triduum statuerat exerceri, die sequenti, priori tamen ordine non servato, indifferenter milites cum scutiferis ludum laudabiliter peregerunt, & ut prius virtutis præmia receperunt, qui judicio Dominarum se habuerunt fortius. Sic nox quarta finem dedit choreis.

Sequenti die, Regia refectioe percepta, Rex pro cujuscunque merito milites & armigeros laudavit non sine fluxu munerum, munificentiaque Regalis manum porrigens liberalem, Dominas & Domicellas armillis & muneribus aureis & argenteis olofericisque donavit insignioribus, omnibusque cum pacis osculo valedixit, & concessit licentiam redeundi.

Entrevens de Ch. iv. Emper. &c. par Godefroy p. 127 &c.

NUMB. LXXXVI.

Cum Domino. Anno 1260. die octava *Aprilis* in Consilio generali congregato more solito ad sonum campanæ, & tubarum Domini Domini constituerunt, quod secunda Dominica Mensis *Mai* factus esset Miles ad expensas publicas nobilis, & fortis vir Ildibrandus vocatus Giratafca. Venta igitur die secundi *Sabati* Mensis *Mai* valde mane præfatus nobilis, & strenuus vir Ildibrandus bene, & nobiliter indutus cum magna masnada suorum ingreditur Palatium, & iuravit fidelitatem Dominis Dominis, & Sancto Protectori Civitatis Arretij in manus Notarij, & super sancta Dei Evangelia: postea honorifice ivit ad Matrem Ecclesiam, ut haberet benedictionem, & pro honore eius adfuerunt sex domicelli de Palatio, & sex Tibicines de Palatio: In hora Prandij fuit ad prandendum, ex deliberatione Dominorum, in domum Domini *Ridolfoni*. Pro prandio fuit panis, & aqua, & sal, secundum legem militiæ, & commensales fuerunt cum eo dictus *Ridolfonus*, & duo Eremitæ Camaldulenses, quorum senior post prandium fecit illi sermonem de officio, & obligationibus Militis. Post hoc Ildibrandus ingressus est cubiculum in quo stetit solus per horam unam, & postea ingressus est ad eum Senex Monachus Sanctæ Floræ, cui devote, & humiliter confessus fuit peccata sua, & accepit ab ipso absolutionem, & fecit penitentiam impositam. His peractis ingreditur cubiculum Barbitonfor, qui concinne caput, & barbam eius curavit, & postea ordinavit omnia, quæ necessaria erant ad Balneationem. Rebus sic stantibus ex deliberatione Dominorum venerunt ad domum *Ridolfoni* quatuor strenui Milites *Andreassus* filius Marabuttini, *Albertus* Domigianus, *Gilfredus* Guidoternus, & *Vgus* de Sancto Polo cum masnada nobilium domicellorum, & cum turba Ioculariorum, Mensestreliorum, & Tibicinum. *Andreassus*, & *Albertus* spoliaverunt Ildibrandum, & collocaverunt eum in Balneum; *Gilfredus* autem Guidoternus, & *Vgus* de Sancto Polo dederunt illi optima documenta de munere, & officio novi Militis, & de magna dignitate. Post horam unam Balnei positus fuit in lecto mundo, in quo lintea erant albilima, & finilima de mussali; & papilio, & alia necessaria lecti de drappo serico albo erant. Permanfit Ildibrandus per horam unam in lecto, & cum iam nox appropinquaret fuit vestitus de Medjalana alba cum caputio, & fuit cinctus cinctura coriæ,

cea, Sumpfit refectionem ex solo pane, & aqua; & postea cum *Ridolfono*, & quatuor supradictis ivit ad Matrem Ecclesiam, & per totam noctem vigilavit in Capella, quæ est a manu dextra, & oravit Deum, & Sanctissimam Matrem Virginem, & Sanctum Donatum, ut facerent eum bonum militem, honoris plenum, & justum. Adstiterunt illi per totam noctem cum magna devotione duo Sacerdotes Ecclesiæ, & duo Clerici minores; item quatuor pulcræ, & nobiles domnicellæ, & quatuor nobiles domnæ seniores nobiliter indutæ, quæ per totam noctem oraverunt Deum, ut hæc Militia esset in honorem Dei, & Sanctissimæ Matris ejus Virginis, & Sancti Donati, & totius Sanctæ universalis Ecclesiæ. *Ridolfonus*, & quatuor alii supradicti iverunt ad dormiendum; sed ante auroram redierunt. Orta jam aurora Sacerdos benedixit gladium, & totam armaturam a galea usque ad solerettas ferreas; postea celebravit Missam, in qua *Ildibrandus* accepit a Sacerdote humiliter, & cum magna devotione Sanctissimum, & Sacratissimum Corpus, & Sanguinem Domini nostri Jesu Christi. Post hoc obtulit Altari unum magnum Cereum viride, & libram unam argenti bonorum denariorum Pisanorum; item obtulit pro redemptione animarum Sancti Purgatorii libram unam argenti bonorum denariorum Pisanorum. His peractis portæ Ecclesiæ apertæ fuerunt, & omnes redierunt in Domum *Ridolfoni*, in qua Domicelli de Palatio nobilem, & divitem refectionem præparaverant; ponendo supra unam tabulam magnam, magnam quantitatem trageæ, diversa genera tartararum, & alia similia cum optima Guarnaccia, & Tribbiano. Facta refectione *Ildibrandus* ivit aliquantum ad dormiendum. Interim cum esset jam hora redeundi ad Ecclesiam, novus futurus miles surrexit e lecto, & fuit indutus ex drappis omnibus albis sericeis cum cinctura rubra auro distincta, & cum simili stola. Interim Tibicines de Palatio, & Jocularis, & Menestrellii tangebant sua instrumenta, & canebant varias stamptas in laudem Militiæ, & novi futuri Militis. Postea omnes iverunt ad Matrem Ecclesiam cum magna turba militum, & nobilium Domicellorum, & magna quantitate plebis vociferantis Vivat Vivat. In Ecclesia incæpit Missa magna, & solemnitas. Ad Evangelium tenuerunt enses nudos, & elevatos *Ludovicus* de *Odomeris*, *Antonius* a *Mammi*, *Cerca* guerra illorum de *Gioncolis*, & *Guillelmus Miserangeschi*. Post Evangelium *Ildibrandus* juravit alta voce quod ab illa hora in

antea

antea foret fidelis, & Vassallus Dominorum Dominorum Communis Civitatis *Arretii*, & Sancto Donato. Item alta voce juravit quod juxta suum posse defenderet semper Domnas, Domnicellas, pupillos, orphanos, & bona Ecclesiarum contra vim, & potentiam injustam potentium hominum, & contra illorum gualdanas juxta suum posse. Post hoc Amphofus Bufdragus cinxit Ildibrandum calcare aurato in pede dextro, & D. Testa dictus Lupus cinxit eum calcare aurato in pede sinistro. Post hæc pulchra nobilis Domnicella *Aliphora* filia *Berengherii* gladium illi cinxit. Postea *Ridolfonus* de more dedit illi Gautatam, & dixit illi. Tu es Miles nobilis Militiæ equestris, & hæc Gautata est in recordationem illius, qui te armavit militem, & hæc Gautata debet esse ultima injuria, quam patienter acceperis.

Finita celebratione Sacrosancti Sacrificij Missæ cum tubis, & timpanis redierunt omnes ad domum *Ridolfoni*. Ante portam D. *Ridolfoni* stabant duodecim pulcræ, & nobiles Domnicellæ cum guirnaldis de floribus in capite tenentes in manibus catenam ex floribus, & herbis contextam, & hæc Domnicellæ facientes ferralium nolebant, quod novus miles intraret in domum *Ridolfoni*. Novus autem Miles dono dedit illis divitem anulum cum rosa aurea, & dixit, quod juraverat se defensorum esse Domnas, & Domnicellas, & tunc illæ permiserunt illi, ut intraret in Domum, in qua a Domicellis de Palatio magnum Prandium paratum fuerat, in quo multi milites, & seniores sederunt. In medio prandij Domini Domini miserunt divitem donum novo Militi, scilicet duas integras, & fortes armaturas ferreas, unam albam cum clavellis argenteis, alteram viridem cum clavellis, & ornamentis auratis, duos nobiles, & grandes equos alemannicos unum album, alterum nigrum; duos Roncinos, & duas nobiles, & ornatas vestes armaturæ superimponendas. Inter prandendum projecta fuit ex fenestris ad populum, qui erat in Strata, magna quantitas trageæ, multi panes mustacei, multæ gallinæ, & pipiones, & magna aucarum quantitas; unde magna, & incredibilis lætitia in toto illa contrata erat; populus exclamabat Vivat Vivat, & orabat, ut frequentius hæc festivitas fieret, cum jam essent plures quam viginti anni quod facta non fuisset. Post prandium novus Miles *Ildibrandus* Armatura illa tota alba, quæ benedicta fuerat in Missa ad auroram armatus fuit, & cum eo armati fuerunt multi nobiles homines.

Postea

Postea *Ildibrandus* ascendit in equum album, & ivit ad Plateam positus in medio a Luchino Tastonis supranomine dicto Pescolla, & a Farolfo Catenaccio vocato Squarcina cum ornatis scutiferis lanceas, & scutos deportantibus. In Platea præparatum erat magnum Torneamentum, multaque Domnæ, & Domnicellæ in fenestris erant; & multa turba populi in Platea. Sex Judices Torneamenti fuerunt Brunus Bonajutæ, Nimerius de Totis, Ubertus de Palmiano dictus Pollezza, Guidoguerra Montebuonus, Bertoldus olim Cenci vocatus Barbaquadra, & Nannies de Fatalbis vocatus Mangiabolzonus. Hastiludium prius factum fuit de corpore ad corpus cum lanceis absque ferro acuto, sed cum trappellis obtusis, in quo novus Miles bene, & fortiter se gessit, & cucurrit primo de corpore ad corpus contra Jacobum a domo Bovacci, secundo contra Inghilfredum Guafconis supranomine vocatum Scannaguelfos, tertio contra Godentium Tagliaboves. Postea fuit factum torneamentum cum evaginatæ ensibus, & res fuit pulcra, & terribilis, & tanquam vera guerra esset, & per gratiam Dei nihil mali, vel dampni accidit, nisi quod in Brachio sinistro leviter vulneratus fuit Philippus illorum a Focognano. Magnam autem virilitatem monstravit Pierus Paganellus, cui cum ex ictu ensis projecta esset galea de capite, & remansisset cum capite nudo, & absque birreto ex maculis, noluit tamen ex torneamento exire, ut honeste poterat; sed intentus ad bene agendum, & ad gloriam acquirendam scuto cooperiebat caput suum, & in majori solta pugnantium se se immiscebat. Appropinquante jam vespere cum magno strepitu tubarum indictus fuit finis torneamenti; & Judices primum premium dederunt novo Militi. Secundum Piero Paganello, tertium Vico de Pantaneto, qui currens de corpore ad corpus cum Toniaccio illorum de Bostolis, lancea illum de equo projecerat, licet multi dicerent, quod hoc non fuit ex defectu Toniacci, sed equi ipsius, tamen Toniaccius de Bostolis non potuit se se eximere quin deportaretur in Barella derisoria facta de fustis. Novus autem Miles suum premium dono misit per duos ornatos scutiferos nobili, & pulchræ Domnicellæ Alionoræ, quæ in Ecclesia cinxerat ipsi enses Militiæ, & premium fuit unum Bravium de drappo ferreo vermiculato. Post hoc cum jam esset nox alta novus Miles *Ildibrandus* cum quantitate luminarium, & cum tubis, & buccinis rediit in domum *Ridolfoni*, ubi cœnavit cum amicis,

amicis, & confanguineis, & post cœnam distribuit honorifica munera *Ridolfono*, & omnibus illis, qui aliquam operam præstiterunt. Habuerunt etiam sua munera Domnæ, & Domnicellæ, quæ in nocte vigiliæ *Ildibrando* adfiterant, ec.

Hæc scripsi ego Pierus filius Mattei a Pionta clericus anno ætatis meæ 50. qui vidi aliam similem solemnitatem quando anno millesimo dugentesimo, & quadragesimo Domino Papa Gregorio sedente, & Domino Friderigo Imperatore Serenissimo imperante factus Miles Corradus Mosnaderius in Ecclesia Sancti *Pieri*, sed illa solempnitas non fuit tam magnifica, quam fuit ista Domini *Ildibrandi*, quæ vere fuit magnificentissima, ec. *Della seguente Scrittura, che racconta, come in Firenze furon fatti Cavalieri Giovanni, e Gualtieri Panciatichi ne sono stato favorito dal Sig. Conte Lorenzo Magalotti, che ne conserva copia in un Libro diverse Scritture antiche raccolte da uno de suoi nobilissimi Antenati.*

1388. Die 25 Aprilis 1388. præsentibus Ser Dominico Ser Salvi, Fratre *Georgio*.

Domini fecerunt Syndicum ad militiam Domini *Joannis* de *Panciatichis*, & *Gualtieri* filii *Bandini*, postea nominati Domini *Bandini*, & ad omnia, & omnes actus, & ceremonias Dominum *Gabrielem Aiimo* de *Venetis* Capitaneum Populi.

Die 25 Aprilis 1388. Indictione 11. præsentibus *Agbinolfo* D. *Qualterotti*, *Nicolaio Nicolai*, *Laurentio* D. *Palmerii*, & *Francisco* Nerii Fioravantis in Ecclesia Sancti *Joannis*.

1. Caput, & barbam sibi facit fieri pulcrius quam prius esset, & caput, & voluit pro completo haberi factus per Dominum. C. hoc modo quod manu tetigit barbam.

2. Intret balneum in signum lotionis peccati, & cujuslibet vitii, ec. puritatis prout est puer, qui exit de Baptismate. Commisit quod fieret per Dominum *Philippum* de *Magalottis*. D. *Michaelem* de Medicis, & D. *Thomasmum* de *Sacchettiis*, & pro eis balnearetur, & sic balneatus fuit.

3. Statim post Balneum intret lectum purum, & novum in signum magnæ quietis, quam quis debet acquirere virtute Militiæ, & per Militiam. Missus in lectum per prædictos Commis. ec.

4. Aliquantulum in lecto strato exeat, & vestiatur de drappo albo, & fericeo in signum nitiditatis, quam debet custodire Miles libere, & pure. De mandato Capitanei indutus albo, & sic illo sero remansit inter tertiam, & quartam horam noctis:

5. In-

5. Induatur roba vermilia pro sanguine, quem Miles debet fundere pro servitio Domini nostri Jesu Christi, & pro Sancta Ecclesia. Die 26 dicti Mensis de mane in dicta Ecclesia presentibus supradictis de mandato, & commissione Capitanei exutus est, & indutus vermilio per dictos Milites.

6. Calcetur caligis bünis in signum terræ, quia omnes sumus de terra, & in terram redibimus. Factum est de caligis nigre de firico successive per dictos tres Milites.

7. Surgat incontinenti, & cingatur una cinctura alba in signum Virginitatis, & puritatis, quam Miles multum debet inspicere, & multum procurare ne fedet corpus suum. Factum est, & cinxit eum Capitaneus.

8. De calcare aureo, sive aurato in signum promptitudinis servitii militaris, & per militiam requisiti prout volumus alios Milites esse ad nostram jussionem. Dicta die 26. super Arengheria factum mandato, ut supra, per D. *Vannem de Castellanis*, & *Nicolaum Pagnozzi*.

9. Cingatur ensis in signum securitatis contra Diabolum: Et duo tallii significant directuram, & legalitatem prout est defendere pauperem contra divitem, & debilem contra fortem. Factum per Dom. Donatum de Acciaivolis.

10. Alba infula in capite in signum, prout debet facere opera pura, & bona, ita debet reddere animam puram, & bonam Domino nostro. Omissum fuit, quia non erat infula.

11. Alapha pro memoriâ ejus, qui Militem fecit.

Non debet Miles aliquid villanum, vel turpe facere timore mortis, vel carceris. Quatuor generalia faciat Miles.

Primo non sit in loco, in quo falsum judicium detur. Secundo non de prodicione tractare, & inde discedere, nisi alias possit resistere. Tertio non ubi Dama, vel Damigella exconfilietur, sed consulere recte. Quarto jejunare die *Veneris* in memoriam Domini nostri, ec. nisi valetudine, vel mandato Superioris, ec. vel alia justa causa.

Dicto die 26 *Aprilis* factus fuit Miles armatus *Gualterius*, postea ob memoriam Patris dictus Dominus *Bandinus*, & factus fuit per Capitaneum *Sindicum*, ec. Calciatus calcaribus per Dom. *Robertum Pieri Lippi*, & Dom. *Baldum de Catalanis*, & cinctus ense per Dom. *Pazzinum de Strozis*, omnia in presentia D. D. & plurium aliorum Militum, & populi multitudo maxima fuit.

D. Joannes promisit, & juravit pro se, & pro D. Bandino, & promisit quando esset legitimæ ætatis infra annum coram D. D. ratificaret, & juraret.

Fran. Redi Bacco in Toscana. p. 163. &c.

NUMB. LXXXVII.

A tresnoble, & excellent Prince Johan de France, Duc de Normandie, & aisne filz de Phelippe par la grace de dieu Roy de France, Frere Johan de Vignay vostre Petit religieux entre les autres de vostre Seigneurie paix, sante, joie, & victorie sur vos ennemis — Je mis un petit livret de Latin en Francois — selon le gieu des eschez. &c.

De l'estat & de la fourme des Chevaliers, & de l'ordre de Chevalerie.

Le Chevalier doit estre sur son cheval arme de toutes armes, le haubert vestu, le heaume en la teste, arme de jambes, & de piez, la lance en la main destre, couvert a sa fenestre de son escu, ses plates vestues, sicome il appartient. Et doit avoir cheval convenable, & enseignie pour Bataille. Et leur doit souvenir, que quant ils furent faiz Chevaliers, ils furent premierement baignez, le chief laue & roingne, & la barbe tondue ou rese. Et par ce est il signifie, que tout aussi comme ilz ont les membres nettoiez par dehors, aussi doivent ilz estre nez pardedens, & purs en conscience & en pensee. Et se doivent garder nettement & baigner en toute cointoisie & honeste. Et apres ce baing furent couchiez en un lit net & noble, que signifie que ilz doivent conquerre par leur chevalerie leur lit en paradis. Quant ilz se leverent du lit, ilz furent premierement vestitz de robe linge blanche, & nette, par laquelle il leur est donne a entendre, quil doivent tousjours tenir leur corps pur & net en chaaste & sans vice d'ordure. Et puis furent vestuz par dessus d'une robe vermeille, laquelle signifie, que tout bon chevalier doit souffrir paine, & esprendre son sanc pour le droit de leglise, & de sa terre, & pour le droit naturel son seigneur deffendre. Et puis ilz furent chauffez de chauffes noires en signe de humilite, si que il li souviengne dont il vint, qui il est, & ou il yra, & doit penser que il est mortel; Et apres ce li furent chauffiez deux esperons dorez pour son cheval insticier & contraindre, parquoy il est signifie, que tout aulli comme

il contraint son cheval de estre prest & vite a son talent, doit il avoir sa pensee esmeue a dieu servir, amer, & honorer. Et dont apres lui est l'espee cainte, dont la reнге doit estre blanche & nette, & appellee sengle de Chevalerie, & par l'espee, qui trenche de ii pars sont signifiees ii choses, qui sont en tous bons Chevaliers, cest de garder & deffendre le droit temporel & l'espirituel, Et ces deux trenchans sont appliquez aux glaives, des quelz Jhesu Crist dist en l'evangile, quant il commanda a ses disciples & dist. Qui na glaiue vende sa cote & lachate, & Saint Pierre li dist, Sire vecy deux glaiues, & il respondu il souffit, Mais les disciples si ne saviferent pas pourquoy il disoit ce, qui signefoit par lui le povoir qu'il donna a Saint Pierre de pardonner & corriger pechiez. Et par lautre il signifiat le glaiue de puniffion, qui appartient aux Princes temporelz, Car il nest nul Prince, a qui il n'appartiengne estre Chevalier. Et par la reнге blanche il est signifie, que il doit nettement tenir ses Rains, qui en sont cains de toute ordure de luxure. Mais tout avant que il prengne esperons ne espee, il doit veiller toute nuit en l'eglise en prieres & en oroifons, en requerant a dieu, que il lui vueille donner grace & vertu & povoir de maintenir bien & honestement l'estat de Chevalerie. Et quant toutes ces choses sont ordonnez & faictes ilz doivent aler devant le Roy, ou le Prince, qui les fait Chevaliers, & estre agenoulz devant lui en signe de humilite & aussi comme par maniere de droite feaulte, Car ilz ne doivent jamais faire ne penser contre lui chose qui ne soit honeste, & raisonnable. Et le Seigneur leur doit donner une Colee en signe de proefte & de hardement, Et que il leur souviengne de celui noble homme qui la fait Chevalier. Et donc les doit le Seigneur baisier en la bouche en signe de paix & d'amour. Et quiconques recoit en soy l'ordre de Chevalerie, il doit avoir franchise, loyalte, amour & misericorde, & doit amer les drois a garder, & deffendre, soustenir & aidier aux vesues, & aux orphelins, sicome cil qui par l'ordre de Chevalrie est ennoblid'armes corporells, & doit resplendir par vertu de bonns meurs, Car tant comme la dignite & la noblesse de Chevalerie surmonte les autres persons par reverence & par honneur, de tant doit il plus apparoir sur les autres par vertu & par courtoisie.

Cotton Library. Nero, C. 9. II. f. 168.

The maner of maykyng Knyghtes aftyr the Custome of Engelonde in tyme of peas and at the Coronacion [of the Kyng] that is Knyghtes of the Bathe.

Whanne a Esquier comyth into the Courte, for to receyve the Ordre of Knyghthode, in tyme of peas, aftyr the custome of *Engelond*; he shall be worshipfully receyved of the Officeres of the Courte, as of the Styward, or Chaumberleyn, yf they be present, and elles of the Marchalles, and Usheres, in the absence of the Styward, and Chamberleyn. And than there shall be ordeyned twoo worshipful Squyers wyse, and wele norryshed in curtesy, and expert in the deedes of Knyghthood: And they shal be governours to hym, to serve, and ordeyn, what shall longe to him for the tyme. And in case, that the Squyer come before dyner, he shall serve the Kyng of water, or of a dyssh only of the fyrste course, And that is doo for to take leave of servyce of Squyers: Thanne his Governours shall lede hym into his Chambre, withoute any more to be seyne [on] that day: And at even, the Governours shall sende aftyr the Barbour, and he shall make redy a *Bathe*, in the best wyse that he can: The fatte withinne, and withoute wrapped with linnen cloth clene, and whyte, and covered with thicke Carpettes, or Mantelles, for colde of the nyght: Thanne shall the Squyers berde be shaven, and his hede rounded, which doone, the Governours shall goo unto the Kyng, and to hym say thus; Mooste myghty Prince, oure soverayn Lord, loo, hit wexeth nere unto the evyn, and oure Maister is redy unto the *Bathe*, whanne it pleaseth unto your royall mageste; And upon that, the Kyng shall commaunde his Chamberleyn, to goo unto the Squyers Chambre, that is to be made Knyght, And to take with hym the mooste worthy, and mooste wyse Knyghtes, that been there present, to thentent, that they shall the same Squyer truly counseyle, enforme, and teche wysely of the Ordre [of makynge] of Knyghthod. And soo with that, other yonge Squyers of Housholde, with Mynstrelles, syngynge, and daunsynge shall goo before the Chamberleyn, and the seyde Knyghtes, unto the tyme that they come unto the Chambre dore of the seyde Squyer, that is to be made Knyght; Whanne the Governours hering noyse of Mynstralles, Anoon they shall make naked theyr

Maister, and all naked shalbe put into the *Bathe*, The Menstralles before the entre of the Chamberleyn, and other noble Knyghtes, shall abyde, and be styll withoute noyse togedyr with the sayd Squyers, levynge their noyse for the tyme; Which thynge doon, the Chamberleyn with the sayde noble Knyghtes shall enter prevely, withoute noyse, into the Chambre of the feyd Squyere, And whan they entre, everich to other shall do reverence, and worshipp, which of them shalbe the fyrste for to counsell the Squyer in the *Bathe*, of the Ordre, and the makynge to performe the Kyngs comaundement: And when they be accorded, than shal the fyrste go the *Bathe*, and there he shall knele before the *Bathe* [ffat] seyenge secretly to the Squyer thus, Right dere brother, grete whorshippe be this Ordre unto yow, And Almighty God yeve yow the praysynge of all Knyghthod; Loo this is the Ordre; Be ye stronge in the feith of holy Chirche, [stedfaste and abydyng in worde manly Protector unto Holy Chirch] and Wydowes, and Maydones oppressed releve, as right comaundith, yeve ye to evyrych his owne, with all thy mynde, above all thynge love and drede God; And above all other erthly thynge love the Kyng thy Sovrayn Lord, hym, and his right defende unto thy power, And before all worldly thynge put hym in worshipp, and thyngs that be not to be taken beware to begynne; In this wyse or better &c. And whanne the Knyght [Esquier] is thus counselled, the same Knyght Counseyour shall take in his hande water of the *Bathe*, and shall putte it upon the Shoulders of the Squyer, and take his leve to goon, and [so] departe; And the Governours at all tymes shall kepe the fydes of the *Bathe*; In this wyse shall all the other Knyghtes aforesayd doon, evyrych aftyr other, in the best wyse, that they can; And this doon, the Knyghtes without noyse shall go out of the Chambre for the tyme; Than shall theyr Governours take their Maister oute of the *Bathe*, and ley hym softly in his bed, to drye; And the bed shall not be of grete valewe, but withoute colour [Silour] or corteyns: And whan the Squyer is wele dried, he shall ryse out of his bed, and shall clothe hym warme for the wacche of nyghte, and upon all his clothes he shall have a cape of black ruffet, with longe sleeves, and the hoode sewed unto the cape, in manere of an hermyte: The Squyer thus arrayde, and made redy, the Barbour shall put away the *Bathe*, and all thyng, that is aboute the *Bathe*, as wele with-
inne,

inne, as withoute: The Barbor shall take all for his fee; And also he shall have for his shavyng, lyke as it folowith heer-aftyr, That is to wete, yf he be a Duke, an Erle, an Baron, or a Bachelere aftyr the custome of the Courte, evyrych shall yeve aftyr his astate; And pryncipally yf Jugement be requyred, it shalbe than at the wyll of the Kynges mageste; Aftyr this, the Governours shall open the dore of the Chambre, And the Knyghtes shall wysely enter inne agen with Mynstralles pleyng in their instrumētis, and Squyers before them, syngyng, and daunsyng, shall lede the Squyer into the Chapell, And whan they be in the Chapell, there shalbe ordeyned spyces, and wyne for the Knyghtes, and Squyers; whiche thyng doone, the Governours shall lede these Knightes afore the Squyer, for to take theyr leve, And he with Sylence shall thanke them of theyr labours, and worshippes, that they have doon unto hym; In that wyse they shall goo oute of the Chapell, The Governours shall shutt the dore, tyll the dawnynge wex clere, and the Day come, And there shall abyde in the Chapell noon, but the [Squyer] the Squyers Governours, * Officers of Armes and the Wayte. In this wyse, shall the Squyer all nyght [in the chapell] tyll it be day, abyde evyr in his Prayers, prayng, and besechyng almyghty God, and the blessed vyrgine *Marie* his Modir, that thylke passyng temporall dignyte, he may receyve to his worshippe, and prayng [pleyng] of God, the blyssed vyrgyne *Marie* his Modir [of] holy Cherche, and the Ordre of Knyghthod: And whan the dawnynge comith, he shall have a Preste, and be confessed, yef it will lyke hym of his Synnes, and Trespasse, which thyng ended, he shall have his Matens, and Masse, and be comonyd, if he wyll: Aftyr his entre into the Chapell, he shall evyrmore have a ferge, or a taper of Wex brennyng before hym, And whan Masse is begonne, oon of the Governours shall holde the taper brennyng before hym, unto the tyme that the Gospell be begonne, And than he shall betake it unto his Maister, which shall holde it in his hande, tyll the Gospell be endyd, alwey his hede beyng covryd; And at the ende of the Gospell the Governour shall receyve the tapur agayne, and put it before his Maister unto the ende of the Masse: At the Levacioun of the Sacrament, oon of the Governours shall putte of the hoode

* Officers of Armes omitted in my MS.

of his Myaster, And aftyr the sight of the Sacrament, he shall doo it on ayen, tyll *In principio* be begonne; Oon of his Governours shall putte of his hooде, and make hym stande, and holde the sayd taper in his hande, havynge in the seide taper styckyng a peny nygh the lyght: And whan the prest seith *Verbum caro factum est*, he shall knele down, and offre the tapre, and the peny. It is to wete, the taper to the worshippe of God, And the peny to the worship of hym, that shall make hym Knyght; These thynges doon, the Governours shall lede hym ayen into his Chambre, and ley him ayen in his bed, tyll it be forth dayes; And there he shall take the reste, that the wacche of the nyght made wery; so than the bedde shal be amended, and refreshed before the tyme, that his Maister wake, that is to wete, with coverture of cloth of Gold, called *Siglyton*. And that shall be lyned with blewe carde. And whan they [Governours] see tyme, they shall goo to the Kynge, and seye to him thus, Moste victorious Prynce, whan that it lykith unto youre high Mageste, oure Maister shall awake; And ther-uppon shall the Kynge comaunde the Knyghtes * of Armez, Squyers, and Mynstralles aforesayd, that they goo unto the Chambre of the Squyer, to awake hym, array him, and clothe hym, and brynge hym into the Hall before the Kyng hymself: But before the comynge of the Knyghtes into the Squyers Chambre, the Governours shall ordeyne all maner necessaries redy by ordre, for to be delyvred unto the Knyghtes, And whanne these Knyghtes be come unto the Chambre of the Squyere, they shall enter softly withoute noyse, and sey to the Squyere Sir, good day, It is tyme to aryse: And with that, the Governours shall take, and arayse him up by the Armes; Thanne the moste worthy, and moste wyse shall take unto hym his Sherte, Another next worthy his Breche, the thyrde his dublet, the fourth shall cloth him with a furcot [gown] of rede Tartayn, [other twayn shall lyfte hym up of his bed] Other tweyne shall doon oon his hofyn, which shal be of blac fylke, or of blak cloth with soles of ledyr sowed to them, Other tweyn shall boton his sleeves, Another shall gyrde him with a gyrdyll of whyte ledyr withoute harneysse of ony metall of the breede of un ynche; Another shall kembe his hede [another shall put the Coyse upon his hede] Another shall geve hym his mantell

* Of Armes omitted in my MS.

of the fute of the curtyll of rede tarteryn fastened with a lace of white fylke, with a payre of white gloves hangyng at the ende of the lace; But he shall have of the Chaundeler of the housholde the Corce [Coife] gyrdyll and the Gloves: And on the other syde the Chaundelere shall take for his fee all the Garmettes, and all the array, with all the necessaries, in the which the Squyer was arrayde, and clothed the day that he entred into the Courte, for to take the ordre, togedyr with the bed in the which he lay furst aftyr the *Bathe*, also wele the cloth of Gold called Siglaton, as other necessaries touchyng the sayd bed [and over that the fyrste robe in which he was clothed after the Ordur taken]. And this thyngs fully doon, these wyse Knyghtes shall lede this Squyer on horsebak unto the Kyngs halle; all tymes the * Officers of Armes, and the Mynstralles beyng before making theyr Menstralsye, Theyr [the] horse shall be arayde in this wyse, he shall have a sadyll covred with blak lether; the arsons of whyte tre, foure square and blak styroppes with gylt Irons, And his sadyll shall have no Cropere, but a paytrell of blak lether with a crosse plate [patee] before hangyng [beforn] uppon the breste of the horse, his brydyll shall be blak lether pleyne with longe reynes in the gyse of *Spayne*, and a crosse plate [patee] in the forehede, And there shalbe ordeyned a yonge gentyll Squyer, for to ryde before this [the] Squyer that is to be made Knyght, And he shalbe opyn hede, And shall bere the fwerd of the Squyer; the poynte downward, with spores hangyng upon the Swerd, And the Swerd shall have a whyte scabard, And fret with the gyrdell and scales [frette] with whyte lether withoute ony harneyse, And the yonge gentyll Squyer shall holde the fwerde by the poynte [and] in this wyse: They [He] shall ryde to the Kyngs halle, all tymes the seyde Governours beyng redy to the Maister, as it is fyttyng to be, And the forseyd noble and wyse Knyghtes shall soberly lede this Squyer, as they owen, And whan the Squyer comyth before the hall dore; the Marchalles and Ushers [beforn hym] shal be redy afore him in the moiste honeste wyse, that they can, seyng thus, *Commeth down*, And than he shall come down, The Marchall of *Englond* for his fee shall take the horse, or 100*s.* This thyng thus doon, these wyse Knyghtes shal lede the Squyer into the halle, or into the

* Officers of Armes omitted in my MS.

grete Chambre unto his table; And forthwith he shall be putte at the begynnyng of the secunde table, tyll that the Kyng come, The feyd Knyghtes [standing] aboute his Person, as on every syde, And the yonge Squyer swerd-berer before hym, standyng with the swerd betwix the 2 Governours [aforeseid] Whanne the Kyng comyth into the Hall, and perceyveth the Squyer redy to take the Ordre in dew wyse, he askyth for the swerd, and the spores, The Kyngs Chambyrleyn shall take the swerd, and the spores oute of the handes of the yonge Squyere, And shall take and shewe them to the Kyng, The Kyng shall receyve the right spore, and betake it to oon of the mooste worthy that standith aboute, commaundyng hym that he put it on the right hele of the Squyer, And by the Kyngs commaundement, that lord knelyng on the oon kne, shall take the Squyer by the right leg, and putte the [hys] foote upon his kne, and [soe] shall putte the spore upon his hele, and [he] shall make a croffe upon the kne of the Squyer, and shall kyffe it, Thanne shall another lord put on the other hele an other spore in the same wyse, that the other dyd, Thanne the Kyng of the mekenesse of his hygh myght, takyng the swerd in his handes, shall gyrde therwith the Squyer; Thanne shall the Squyere lyft up his armes on high, and the Kyng shall put his armes about the nekke of the Squyer, and lyftyng up his right hande, he shall smyte the Squyer in the necke, seyng thus. *Be ye a good Knyght, kyssyng him.* Aftyrwarde these noble and wyse Knyghtes aforeseyd, this new knyght shall lede into the Chapell with melody, as it is to forne seid, unto the high awtere, And there he shall ungyrthe hym, and his swerd with prayers and devociions shall offre to God, and to holy Cherche, mooste devoutly besechyng God that thylke Ordre mooste worthy dewly he may kepe unto his ende; These thyngs so doon, he shall take a soppe in wyne, And in the goyng oute of the Chapell, the Maister Cooke shalbe redy, and doo of his spores, And shall take hem to hym for his fee, And the reason is this, that in case be, that the Knyght do aftyr ony thyng that be defawte and repreef unto the Ordre of Knyghthod; The Maister Cooke thanne with a grete knyif, with which he dresseth his Messes, shall smyte of his spores from his heles, And therefore in Remembrance of this thyng, the spores of a new Knyght in order takyng, shalbe fee unto the Maister Cooke,

perteyn-

perteynyng dewly unto his Offyce. Thanne shall these wyfe
 Knyghtes aforfayd, lede this newe Knyght into the hall ageyn,
 The which begynnyng the Table of Knyghtes, shall fyttte to
 mete, and the sayd wyfe and noble Knyghtes shall fyttte
 aboute hym at the Table. And the noble Knyghtes [new
 Knyght] shalbe served lyke as other been, And as for that
 tyme, he shall not ete nor drynk at the table, but yf grete
 nede be, nor he shall not move hym, nor loke hedyr nor
 thedyr, more than a Wyiff new wedded, And evyr more
 oon of his 2 Governours shall stonde by hym with a ker-
 chief, of the which, if one nede come, he may serve hym :
 And whan the Kyng aryseth from the Table, and goth into
 the Chambre, ohe newe Knyght shall be lad unto his cham-
 bre, with grete multitude of Knyghtes, Squyers and Myn-
 stralles joyeinge, syngynge, and daunceynge unto the entre
 of his Chambre : And there the Knyghtes Squyers and Myn-
 stralles shall take theyr leve, And the newe Knyght shall
 goe to ete, The dore shall be [fast] clofed, And he shall doo
 off his array, which shalbe yoven to the Kynges [off armys
 if thai be present, and iff thai be not present then to] other
 Herawdes of Armes. * *And also the said Kyng of Armes and
 Herawdes shall have for the Office of Armes of every Duke, Erle,
 Barown, and Bachelere aftyr theyr astatys, And of the leste 20 s.
 for their honours to shew and to trye them in the Kyngs presence
 and in the said Court.* The grey cope shalbe unto the Wayte,
 or a noble for it. And aftyr this mete this noble newe
 Knyght anon shalbe arayde with robe of blewe with strayte
 sleeves, And he shall have uppon the lyft shuldere, a white
 lace of Sylk hangynge, And that lace he shall kepe in that
 wyfe above his clothyng withoutenforth from that day forth
 contynuelly unto that tyme he gete hym som manere [name]
 of worshippe by deservynge, by wytnesse of worthy Knyghtes,
 and Squyers, Kynges, outhr Herawdes of Armes, And trewe
 Herawdes clerely theraftyr reported: Which reporte moste
 entere into the eares of the worthy prynce, which hath made
 hym Knyght, or of som other, or elles of some noble Lady
 for to take away the lace fro the shulder, sayng thus.
 Right deere Lord, I have herd so moche of your worshippes,
 and renown, that ye have doon in dyverse partyes unto the

* This Clause is omitted in my Copy.

grete worshippe of Knyghthod, to youre self, and to hym, that made yow Knyght, that desert and ryght wyll, that this lace be put and take away, But aftyr dyner the worshipful and worthy Knyghtes and Squyers shall come afore the feyd newe Knyght, and hym shall lede to the Kyngs prefence, All tymes beyng before hym the said Squyers Governours, And whanne the newe Knyght comyth into the Kyngs prefence, he shall knele before the Kyng, and shall sey thus, Moost drad and moost myghty prynce of my lytll power and of [what] that I may I thanke yow of all the worshippes curtesies, [and] goodnesse, which ye have doon unto me; And this feyd, he shall take leve of the Kyng, and upon that, the Governours shall goe and take charyte leve of theyr Mayster, seyeng thus, Worshipfull Syr, by the Kyngs commaundement, we have served you, and that commaundement fulfilled, and performed to oure powere, and what we have doon in oure seruyce ageyn [agent] your reverence, we praye yow of youre grace to pardon us our negligence: Ferthermore of the custome of the Kyngs Courte, we aske and requyre yow of Robys, and fees to the terme of oure [your] lyif covenable [and convenient] to the Kyngs Squyers, felowes to the Knyghtis of other landes.

Memorandum the blew Bachelers gowne shalbe fees to the Officers of Armes, wherfore they shall fynde the scochyns of Armes to set upon the Baynnes and beddis.

N U M B. LXXXIX.

Cy apres ensuit, L'ordonnance, & maniere de creer, & faire nouveaux Chevaliers du Baing, au temps de paix selon la Custume d'Angleterre.

Quant ung Escuier uient en la Cour, pour recevoir l'ordre de Chevalrie, en tem de paix, selon la Custume d'Angleterre, il fera tres noblement receu par les Officiers de la Cour, comme le Seneschal, ou du Chamberlain, si ils sont presens, & autrement par les Mareschaux, & Huissiers. Et adonc seront ordonnez deux Escuiers d'onneur, saiges, & bien appris en courtoisies, & nourritures, & en la maniere du fait de chevalrie, & ils seront Escuiers, & Gouverneurs de tout ce, qui appartient a celluy, qui prendra l'ordre desus dict. Et au cas que l'Escuier vienge devant disner, il servira le Roy de
† une

† une escuelle du premier cours seulement. Et puis les dictz Escuiers Gouverneurs admeneront l'Escuier, qui prendra l'ordre, en sa chambre, sans plus estre ueu en celle journee. Et au vespre les Escuiers Gouverneurs enverront apres le Barbier, & il appareillera ung baing, gracieusement appareille de toile, auffy bien dedans la Cuve, que dehors : & que la Cuve soit bien couverte de tapiz, & manteaulx, pour la froidure de la nuyt. Et adoncques fera l'Escuier rez la barbe, & les cheueulx ronde. Et ce fait, les Escuiers Gouverneurs yront au Roy, & diront, Sire, il est vespre, & l'Escuier est tout appareille au *baing*, quant vous plaira. Et sur ce, le Roy commandera a son Chamberlan, qu'il admene avecques luy en la Chambre de l'Escuier les plus gentilz, & les plus saiges Chevaliers, qui sont presens, pour luy informer, & conseillier, & enseigner l'ordre, & le fait de chivalrie. Et semblablement que les autres Escuiers de l'ostel, avec les menestrelx, voient pardevant les Chevaliers, chantans, danfans, & esbatans, jusques a l'uy de la chambre du dit Escuier.

Es quant les Escuiers Gouverneurs orront la noise des menestrelx, ilz despouilleront l'Escuier, & le mettront tout nu dedens le *baing*. Mais a l'entree de la chambre, les Escuiers Gouverneurs feront cesser les menestrelx, & Escuiers auffy pour le temps, & ce fait les gentilz saiges Chevaliers entreront en la Chambre tout coyement sans noise faire : Et adoncques les Chevaliers feront reverence l'un a l'autre, qui sera le premier pour conseillier l'Escuier au *baing*, l'ordre, & le fait. Et quant ilz feront accordes, dont yra le premier au *baing*, & yle c s'agenoillera par devant la Cuve, en disant en secret. Sire, a grant honneur soit il pour vous cest *baing*, & puis lui montrera le fait de l'ordre, au mieulx qu'il pourra, & puis mettra de l'eau du baing dessus l'espaule de l'Escuier ; & prendra conge ; Et les Escuiers Gouverneurs garderont les costes du *baing*. En mesme maniere feront tous les autres Chevaliers, l'un apres l'autre, tant qu'ils ayent tous fait. Et donc partiront les Chevaliers hors de la Chambre pour ung temps ; ce fait les Escuiers Gouverneurs prendront l'Escuier hors du *baing*, & le mettront en son lit, tant qu'il soit sechie : & soit le dit lit simple sans courtines. Et quant il sera sechie, il levera hors du lit, & fera addurne, & vesti bien chaudement

† D'eau, ou de une *Sc.*

pour le veillier de la nuyt. Et sur tous ses draps il vestira une cotte de drap Rouffet, avecques unes longues manches, & de le chapperon, a la ditte Robe, en guise de ung hermite. Et l'Escuier aussi hors du baing, & attorne, le barbier ostera le baing, & tout ce, qu'il a entour, aussi bien dedens, comme en dehors, & le prendra pour son fie, ensemble pour le collier, comme ensi, si cest chevalier soit Conte, Baron, Baneret ou Bachelier, selon la custume de la Cour; & ce fait, les Escuiers Gouverneurs ouvreront l'uy de la Chambre, & feront les saiges Chevaliers reentrer, pour mener l'Escuier a la chapelle. & quant ilz feront entrez, les Escuiers esbatans & danfans, feront admenes pardevant l'Escuier avecques les Menestrels faisans leurs Melodies, jusques a la Chapelle. Et quant ilz feront entrez en la chapelle, les espices, et le vin feront preftz a donner aus ditz Chevaliers, & Escuiers: Et les Escuiers Gouverneurs admeneront les Chevaliers par devant l'Escuier pour prendre congie; & il les mercira tous ensemble de leur travail, honneur, & courtoisies, qu'ilz lui ont fait: & en ce point, ilz partiront hors de la chappelle. Et sur ce les Escuiers Gouverneurs fermeront la porte de la Chapelle, & ny demorera, force Escuier, ses Gouverneurs, ses prestres, le Chandellier, & le Guet, & en ceste guise demoura l'Escuier en la Chapelle, tant qu'il soit jour, toujours en oraison & prieres, requerant le puissant Seigneur, & la benoite mere, que de leur digne grace, lui donnent pouvoir, & confort a prendre ceste haulte dignite temporelle, en l'honneur, & lovenge de leur, de Sainte Eglise, & de l'ordre de Chevalerie, & quant on verra le point du jour, on querra le prestre, pour le Confesser de tous ses pechies, & orra ses Matines, & messe, & puis sera accommunichie, s'il veut: Mais de-puis l'entree de la Chapelle, aura ung cierge ardent devant lui, la messe commencee ung des Gouverneurs tiendra le Cierge devant l'Escuier, jusque a l'evangille, & a l'evangille, le Gouverneur baillera le cierge a l'Escuier jusques a la fin de la dit evangele, l'Escuier Gouverneur ostera le cierge, and le mettra devant l'Escuier, jusques a la fin. de la ditte messe, & a la levacion du Sacrament ung des Gouverneurs ostera le Chapperon de l'Escuier, & apres le Sacrament remettra jusques a l'evangile, *in principio*, & au commencement de *in principio*, le Gouverneur ostera le chapperon de l'Escuier, & le fera ester, & lui donnera le cierge en sa main: Mais quil y ait ung denier, au plus, pres de la lumiere fichie; & quant ce vient

verbum

verbum caro factum est, l'Escuier se genoillera, & offrira le cierge & le denier : cest assavoir, le cierge en l'onneur de dieu, & le denier en l'onneur de lui, qui le fera Chevalier. Ce fait, les Escuiers Gouverneurs remeneront l'Escuier en sa chambre, & le mettront en son lit, jusques a haulte jour, & quant il sera en lit, pendant le temps de son reueillier, il sera amende, cest assavoir, avec ung couverton d'or, appelle *Singleton*, & ce sera linee du carde. Et quant il semblera temps aux gouverneurs, ilz yront au Roy, & lui diront, Sire, quant il vous plaira, notre maistre reueillera, & a ce, le Roy commandera les saiges Chevaliers, Escuiers, & Menestrelz, d'aler a la chambre du dit Escuier pour le reueillier, attourner, vestir & admener pardevant lui, en sa sale ; mais par devant leur entree, & la noise des menestrelz oye, les Escuiers Gouverneurs ordonneront toutes ses necessaries prêts par ordre, a baillier aux Chevaliers pour attourner & vestir l'Escuier, & quant les Chevaliers seront venus a la chambre de l'Escuier, ils entreront ensemble en silence, & diront a l'Escuier, Sire, le tresbon jour, vous soit donne, il est temps de vous leuer, & adrecier, & avec ce les Gouverneurs le prendront par les braz, & le feront drecier, le plus gentil, ou le plus saige Chevalier donnera a l'Escuier sa chemise, ung autre lui baillera ses brages, le tiers lui donnera ung pourpoint, ung autre lui vestira avec ung Kyrstel de rouge tartarin, deux autres le leveront hors du lit, & deux autres les chaulseront, mais soient les chaulses denouz avecquez semelles de cuir, & deux autres lasceront ses manches, & ung autre le ceindra de la sancture decuir blanc, sans aucun harnois de metal, & ung autre peignera sa teste, & ung autre mettra la coiffe, ung autre lui donnera le mantel de foye de Kyrstel de rouge tartarin, atachiez avec ung laz de foye blanc, avec une paire de gans blancs, pandus aubout du las : mais le chandellier prendra pour son fies, tous les garnemens, avec tout l'arroy, & necessaires, en quoy l'escuier estoit attournez, & vestuz, le jour qu'il entra en la court, pour prendre l'ordre, ensemble le lit, en qui il coucha premierement apres le baing, aulli bien avec le *Singleton*, que des autres necessitez, pour lesquels fiefz le dit Chandellier trouvera a ses despens la Coiffe, les gans, la ceinture, & le las : Et puis ce fait les saiges Chevaliers monteront a cheval, & admeneront l'escuier a la sale, & les menestrelz, toujours devant faisans leurs melodies : Mais soit le cheval habillie, comme il eusuit ; il aura une selle couverte de cuir noir, les arczons de blanc fust. &

esquartez, les estriviers noires, les fers dorez, le poitral de noir, avec une croix patee doree pendant pardevant le piz du cheval, & sans croupiere, le frain de noir, a longues cerres a la guise de *Spaigne*, & une croix patee au front, & aussi ordonne ung jeune jouvencel Escuier gentil, qui chevauchera devant l'Escuier, & il sera dechaperonne, & portera l'espee de l'Escuier, avec les esperons pendans sur les eschalles de l'espee, & soit l'espee a blanches eschalles faictes de blanc cuir, & la ceinture de blanc cuir sanz harnois, & le jouvencel tiendra l'espee par la poignee, & en ce point chevaucheront jusques a la sale du Roy, & feront les Gouverneurs prestz a leur mestier, & les Saiges Chevaliers menants le dit Escuier, & quant il vient, par devant la sale, les mareschaulx, & hniissiers se feront prestz a l'encontre de l'Escuier, & lui diront, descendes, & lui descendu, le mareschal prendra son Cheval pour sie ou C. s. & sur ce, les Chevaliers admeneront l'Escuier en la sale, jusques a la haulte table, & puis il sera dreschiez au commencement de la table seconde, jusques a la venue du Roy, les Chevaliers de coste luy, le jouvencel a bout, l'espee estant pardevant luy, par entre les ditz deux Gouverneurs, & quant le Roy sera venu a la sale, & regardera l'Escuier prest de prendre le hault ordre de dignite temporelle, il demandera l'espee, avecques les esperons, & le Chamberlain prendra l'espee, & les esperons du jouvencel, & les monstrera au Roy, & sur ce, le Roy prendra l'esperon dextre, & le baillera au plus noble, & plus gentil, & lui dira, mettez cestui au talon de l'Escuier, & celuy sera agenouille a l'un genoil, & prendra l'Escuier par la jambe dextre, & mettra son pied sur son genoil, & fichera l'esperon au talon dextre de l'escuier, & le Seigneur fera croix sur le genoil de l'escuier, & lui baisera, & ce fait, viendra ung autre Seigneur, qui fichera l'esperon au talon fenestre en meme maniere, & donques le Roy, de sa tresgrande courtoisie, prendra l'espee, & la ceindra a l'escuier, & puis l'escuier leuera ses bras en hault, les mains entretenans, & les gans entre les poux, & les doigts ; & le Roy mettra ses bras entour le col de l'escuier, & levera la * main dextre, & frapera sur le col, & dira, foyes bon Chevalier, & puis le baisera : Et adonques les saiges Chevaliers admeneront le nouvel Chevalier a la chapelle, a tres grande melodie, jusques au hault autel : & ylecques se age-

* *In my MS, it is,* Et puis de sa main destre & de l'espee le frappera sur le col nouillera,

nouillera, & mettra sa dextre main dessus l'autel, & fera promesse de soutenir le droit de Sainte Eglise, toute sa vie, & adonques soy mesme deceindra l'espee avec grande devocion, & prieres a Dieu, a Sainte Eglise, & l'offreira, en priant a Dieu, & a tous ses Saints, qu'il puisse garder l'ordre, qu'il a prins jusques a la fin : & cet accompliz, il prendra une souppe de vin, & a l'issue de la chappelle, le maistre Queux du Roy fera prest de oster les esperons, & les prendra pour son fie ; & dira, je suis venu le maitre queux du Roy, & prens vos esperons pour mon fie, & si vous faites choses contre l'ordre de chevalerie, que Dieu ne veille, je couperai vos esperons de dessus voz talons : & puis les chevaliers le remereront en la sale, & il commencera la table des Chevaliers, & feront assiz entour lui les Chevaliers : & il fera serui, si comme les autres ; mais il ne mangera, ne ne beuvera a table, ne ne se mouvera, ne ne regardera, ne de ca ne dela, non plus, que une nouvelle mariee : & ce fait, ung de ces Gouverneurs aura ung cuerverchef en sa main qu'il tiendra par devant le visage, quant il fera besoing pour le craifier ; & quant le Roy sera leve hors de sa table, & passe en sa chambre, adonque le nouvel Chevalier sera mene a grant foison de Chevaliers, & Menestrelz, devant lui, jusques a sa chambre ; & a l'entree, les Chevaliers, & Menestrelz prendront congie, & il yra a son diner, & les Chevaliers departiz, sa chambre sera fermee, & le nouvel Chevalier sera despouille de ses parcmens, & ilz feront donnez aux Roys des Heralux, se ils y sont presens, ou si non, aux autres Heralux, se ils sont, autrement aux Menestrelz, avecque ung marc d'argent, se il est Bachelier, & se il est Baron, le double ; & se il est Conte, ou de plus, le double. Et le rouffet cappe de nuit sera donne au Guet, autrement ung noble, & adoncq il sera reuestu d'une robe de bleu, & les manches de custote en guisse d'un prestre ; & il aura a l'espaule fenestre ung laz de blanche foye pendant, & ce blanc laz il portera sur tous ses habillemens, qu'il vestira, au long de celle journee, tant qu'il ait gaignie honneur, & renom d'armes, & quil soit recorde de si hault record, comme de nobles Chevaliers, Escuiers, & Heralux d'armes, & qu'il soit renomme de ses faiz d'armes, comme devant est dit, ou aucun hault Prince, ou tres noble Dame de pouvoir couper le las de l'espaule du Chevalier, en disant ; Sire, nous avons ouy tant de vray Renom de vostre honneur, que vous avez fait en diverses parties, au tresgrant honneur de Chevalerie, a vous mesmes, & a celluy
qui

qui vous a fait Chevalier, que droit veult, que cest laz vous soit ostez : Mais apres d'insner les Chevaliers d'onneur & gentilz hommes viendront apres le Chevalier, & le admeneront en la presence du Roy, & les Escuiers Gouverneurs par devant luy. Et le Chevalier dira: Tres noble & Redoubte Seir, de tout ce, que je puis, vous remercie de tous ces honneurs, courtoifies, & bontez, que vous me avez, & vous en mercie. Et ce dit, il prendra congie du Roy : Et fur ce les Escuiers Gouverneurs prendront congie de leur maistre en disant, Sire, nous avons fait par le Commandement du Roy. ainsi comme nous feufines obligez, a nostre pouvoir. Mais s'il est ainsi, que nous vous ayons despleu par negligence, ou par fait en cest temps, Nous vous requérons pardon, & d'autre part, Sire, comme vray droit est, selon les coustumes de Court, & des Royaulmes anciens, Nous vous demandons Robes, & fiefz a terme de vie, comme Escuiers du Roy, Compaignons aux Bacheliers, & aux autres Seigneurs.

In a Copy in the Cott. Libr. Tib. E. 8. p. 86, there follows this Paragraph.

Et les regarderent honourablement par voy del fee ou autrement comme le man. este. Et adonqs apres les ditz novelx Chevaliers chivacherent apertement procheyn devant le Roy desuis le Barons & noblez del realme isint qil purront effir — ou le Roy pleira, come ils soient faitz a le tour de *Loundres*, il chivacheront a *Westm.* Payleys, ou autrement seront procheyn devant le Roy tout le temps del tryumphe, qils sont faitz Chevaliers.

